SIEMENS

SIMATIC NET

Industrial Ethernet Switches SCALANCE XB-200/XC-200/ XF-200BA/XP-200/XR-300WG Command Line Interface

Configuration Manual

Introduction 1

General information 2

General CLI commands 3

Configuration 4

Functions specific to SCALANCE 5

System time 6

Network structures 7

Network protocols 8

Layer 2 management protocols 9

Layer 3 functions 10

Load control 11

Security and authentication 12

Diagnostics 13

10/2021
C79000-G8976-C361-12

Legal information

Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

DANGER

indicates that death or severe personal injury **will** result if proper precautions are not taken.

WARNING

indicates that death or severe personal injury **may** result if proper precautions are not taken.

CAUTION

indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken.

NOTICE

indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

Qualified Personnel

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by **personnel qualified** for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

Proper use of Siemens products

Note the following:

WARNING

Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

Trademarks

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

Disclaimer of Liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.

Siemens AG
Division Process Industries and Drives
Postfach 48 48
90026 NÜRNBERG
GERMANY

C79000-G8976-C361-12
℗ 10/2021 Subject to change

Copyright © Siemens AG 2015 - 2021.
All rights reserved

Table of contents

1 Introduction 23

2 General information 29

2.1 System functions hardware equipment 29

2.2 Configuration limits 32

2.3 Features not supported 35

2.4 Initial assignment of an IP address 36

2.5 Working with the Command Line Interface (CLI) 38

2.6 Protection from brute force attacks 41

2.7 Structure of the Command Line Interface 42

2.8 The CLI command prompt 44

2.9 Symbols of the CLI commands 45

2.10 Addresses and interface names 46
2.10.1 Naming interfaces 46
2.10.2 Address types, address ranges and address masks 48

3 General CLI commands 49

3.1 clear screen 50

3.2 do 51

3.3 end 52

3.4 exit 53

3.5 Help functions and supported input 54
3.5.1 help 54
3.5.2 The command "?" 55
3.5.3 Completion of command entries 56
3.5.4 Abbreviated notation of commands 56
3.5.5 Reusing the last used commands 57
3.5.6 Working through a command sequence 57
3.5.7 The "show" commands 58
3.5.7.1 show history 58
3.5.8 clear history 58

4 Configuration 61

4.1 System 62
4.1.1 The "show" commands 62
4.1.1.1 show cli-console-timeout 62
4.1.1.2 show coordinates 62
4.1.1.3 show device information 63
4.1.1.4 show environmental temperature 63
4.1.1.5 show ethernetip 64

4.1.1.6 show hardware 64
4.1.1.7 show im 65
4.1.1.8 show interfaces 66
4.1.1.9 show interfaces ... counters 67
4.1.1.10 show ip interface 68
4.1.1.11 show pnio 68
4.1.1.12 show lldp neighbors 69
4.1.1.13 show lldp status 70
4.1.1.14 show broadcast-block config 70
4.1.1.15 show unicast-block config 71
4.1.1.16 show multicast-block config 72
4.1.1.17 show noa config 72
4.1.1.18 show versions 73
4.1.2 clear counters 74
4.1.3 clear line vty 74
4.1.4 configure terminal 75
4.1.5 disable 76
4.1.6 enable 76
4.1.7 logout 77
4.1.8 ping 78
4.1.9 Commands in the global configuration mode 79
4.1.9.1 interface 79
4.1.9.2 no interface 81
4.1.9.3 cli-console-timeout 82
4.1.9.4 no cli-console-timeout 83
4.1.9.5 coordinates height 83
4.1.9.6 coordinates latitude 84
4.1.9.7 coordinates longitude 85
4.1.9.8 ethernetip 86
4.1.9.9 pnio 87
4.1.9.10 system contact 87
4.1.9.11 system location 88
4.1.9.12 system name 89
4.1.9.13 username 90
4.1.10 Commands in the interface configuration mode 91
4.1.10.1 alias 92
4.1.10.2 no alias 93
4.1.10.3 broadcast-block 93
4.1.10.4 no broadcast-block 94
4.1.10.5 duplex 94
4.1.10.6 no duplex 95
4.1.10.7 lldp 96
4.1.10.8 no lldp 97
4.1.10.9 media type 98
4.1.10.10 multicast-block 99
4.1.10.11 no multicast-block 100
4.1.10.12 noa port config 101
4.1.10.13 negotiation 101
4.1.10.14 no negotiation 102
4.1.10.15 shutdown 103
4.1.10.16 no shutdown 104
4.1.10.17 power 104

4.1.10.18 speed 105
4.1.10.19 unicast-block 106
4.1.10.20 no unicast-block 106
4.1.10.21 unicast-mac flush 107

4.2 Load and Save 109
4.2.1 File list 109
4.2.2 The "show" commands 110
4.2.2.1 show loadsave files 110
4.2.2.2 show loadsave tftp 111
4.2.3 load tftp 111
4.2.4 save filetype 112
4.2.5 Commands in the global configuration mode 113
4.2.5.1 loadsave 114
4.2.6 Commands in the LOADSAVE configuration mode 114
4.2.6.1 delete 115
4.2.6.2 password 116
4.2.6.3 no password 117
4.2.6.4 tftp filename 117
4.2.6.5 tftp load 118
4.2.6.6 tftp save 119
4.2.6.7 tftp server 120
4.2.6.8 sftp filename 121
4.2.6.9 sftp load 121
4.2.6.10 sftp save 122
4.2.6.11 sftp server 123

4.3 Reset and Defaults 125
4.3.1 restart 125
4.3.2 Commands in global configuration mode 126
4.3.2.1 Introductory sentence for the global configuration mode 126
4.3.2.2 schedule restart-timer 126
4.3.2.3 cancel restart-time 127

4.4 Configuration Save & Restore 128
4.4.1 The "show" commands 128
4.4.1.1 show running-config 128
4.4.2 write startup-config 131
4.4.3 Commands in the global configuration mode 132
4.4.3.1 auto-save 132
4.4.3.2 no auto-save 133

4.5 DCP Discovery and Set (DaS) 135
4.5.1 The "show" commands 135
4.5.1.1 show das info 135
4.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 136
4.5.2.1 das discover interface 136
4.5.2.2 das mac name 137
4.5.2.3 das mac ip 138
4.5.2.4 das mac blink 139
4.5.2.5 das delete 140

4.6 PoE 141
4.6.1 The "show" commands 141
4.6.1.1 show poe status 141

4.6.1.2 show pse status 142
4.6.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 142
4.6.2.1 poe pse usage 143
4.6.2.2 no poe pse usage 143
4.6.3 Commands in the Interface Configuration mode 144
4.6.3.1 poe active 144
4.6.3.2 no poe active 145
4.6.3.3 poe custom maxpwr 145
4.6.3.4 no poe custom maxpwr 146
4.6.3.5 poe custom maxpwr active 147
4.6.3.6 no poe custom maxpwr active 148
4.6.3.7 poe type 148
4.6.3.8 no poe type 149
4.6.3.9 poe prio 149
4.6.3.10 no poe prio 150

4.7 SINEMA 151
4.7.1 The "show" commands 151
4.7.1.1 show sinema 151
4.7.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 151
4.7.2.1 sinema 152
4.7.2.2 no sinema 152

5 Functions specific to SCALANCE 155

5.1 PLUG 156
5.1.1 The "show" commands 156
5.1.1.1 show plug 156
5.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 156
5.1.2.1 plug 157
5.1.3 Commands in the Plug configuration mode 157
5.1.3.1 factoryclean 158
5.1.3.2 firmware-on-plug 158
5.1.3.3 no firmware on plug 159
5.1.3.4 write 159

5.2 WBM 161
5.2.1 The "show" commands 161
5.2.1.1 show web-session-timeout 161
5.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 161
5.2.2.1 web-session-timeout 162
5.2.2.2 no web-session-timeout 162

5.3 Panel button 164
5.3.1 Commands in the global configuration mode 164
5.3.1.1 panel-button control-factory-defaults 164
5.3.1.2 no panel-button control-factory-defaults 165
5.3.1.3 panel-button control-faultmask 166
5.3.1.4 no panel-button control-faultmask 166

5.4 Signaling contact 168
5.4.1 The "show" commands 168
5.4.1.1 show signaling contact 168
5.4.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 168
5.4.2.1 signaling contact mode 169

5.4.2.2 signaling-contact status 169

6 System time 171

6.1 System time setting 171
6.1.1 The "show" commands 171
6.1.1.1 show dst info 171
6.1.1.2 show time 171
6.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 172
6.1.2.1 time 172
6.1.2.2 time set 173
6.1.2.3 time dst date 174
6.1.2.4 time dst recurring 175
6.1.2.5 no time dst 176

6.2 NTP client 177
6.2.1 The "show" commands 177
6.2.1.1 show ntp info 177
6.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 177
6.2.2.1 ntp 178
6.2.3 Commands in the NTP configuration mode 178
6.2.3.1 ntp server id 179
6.2.3.2 no ntp server id 180
6.2.3.3 ntp server id secure 180
6.2.3.4 ntp secure 181
6.2.3.5 no ntp secure 182
6.2.3.6 ntp time diff 182

6.3 SNTP client 184
6.3.1 The "show" commands 184
6.3.1.1 show sntp broadcast-mode status 184
6.3.1.2 show sntp unicast-mode status 184
6.3.1.3 show sntp status 185
6.3.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 185
6.3.2.1 sntp 186
6.3.3 Commands in the SNTP configuration mode 186
6.3.3.1 sntp client addressing-mode 187
6.3.3.2 sntp time diff 188
6.3.3.3 sntp unicast-server ipv4 189
6.3.3.4 no sntp unicast-server ipv4 190

6.4 PTP Client 191
6.4.1 The "show" commands 191
6.4.1.1 show ptp info 191
6.4.2 Commands in global configuration mode 192
6.4.2.1 ptp 192
6.4.2.2 no ptp 193
6.4.2.3 ptp time diff 193
6.4.2.4 ptp transparent-clock configuration 194
6.4.3 Commands in the PTP Transparent Clock configuration mode 195
6.4.3.1 delay-mechanism 195
6.4.3.2 primary-domain 196
6.4.4 Commands in interface configuration mode 196
6.4.4.1 ptp 197
6.4.4.2 no ptp 197

6.4.4.3 ptp transparent-clock transport-mechanism 198

7 Network structures 201

7.1 VLAN 202
7.1.1 The "show" commands VLAN bridge) 203
7.1.1.1 show mac-address-table 203
7.1.1.2 show mac-address-table count 204
7.1.1.3 show mac-address-table dynamic multicast 205
7.1.1.4 show mac-address-table dynamic unicast 206
7.1.1.5 show mac-address-table static multicast 207
7.1.1.6 show mac-address-table static unicast 208
7.1.1.7 show vlan 208
7.1.1.8 show vlan device info 209
7.1.1.9 show vlan learning params 210
7.1.1.10 show vlan port config 210
7.1.1.11 show vlan private-vlan 211
7.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode (VLAN bridge) 212
7.1.2.1 base bridge-mode 213
7.1.2.2 bridge-mode 214
7.1.2.3 interface range 215
7.1.2.4 no interface range 216
7.1.2.5 mgmt vlan 217
7.1.2.6 vlan 218
7.1.2.7 no vlan 219
7.1.2.8 vlan range 220
7.1.2.9 vlan tag-priority override 220
7.1.3 Commands in the Interface configuration mode (VLAN Bridge) 221
7.1.3.1 private-vlan mapping 222
7.1.3.2 no private-vlan mapping 222
7.1.3.3 switchport acceptable-frame-type 223
7.1.3.4 no switchport acceptable-frame-type 224
7.1.3.5 switchport access vlan 225
7.1.3.6 no switchport access vlan 226
7.1.3.7 switchport mode 226
7.1.3.8 no switchport mode 228
7.1.3.9 switchport mode private vlan 228
7.1.3.10 switchport mode dot1q-tunnel 229
7.1.3.11 no switchport mode dot1q-tunnel 230
7.1.3.12 switchport priority default 231
7.1.3.13 no switchport priority default 231
7.1.3.14 switchport private-vlan host-association 232
7.1.3.15 no switchport private-vlan host-association 233
7.1.3.16 switchport private-vlan mapping 234
7.1.3.17 no switchport private-vlan mapping 235
7.1.3.18 switchport pvid 235
7.1.3.19 no switchport pvid 236
7.1.3.20 tia interface 237
7.1.4 Commands in the VLAN configuration mode (VLAN Bridge) 237
7.1.4.1 name 238
7.1.4.2 no name 239
7.1.4.3 ports 239
7.1.4.4 no ports 241

7.1.4.5 priority 243
7.1.4.6 no priority 244
7.1.4.7 priority-enable 244
7.1.4.8 no priority-enable 245
7.1.4.9 private-vlan 246
7.1.4.10 no private-vlan 246
7.1.4.11 private-vlan association 247
7.1.4.12 no private-vlan association 248
7.1.5 The "show" commands (Transparent Bridge) 249
7.1.5.1 show dot1d mac-address-table 249
7.1.5.2 show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast 250
7.1.5.3 show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast 250
7.1.5.4 show vlan device info 251
7.1.6 Commands in the global configuration mode (Transparent Bridge) 252
7.1.6.1 base bridge-mode 252
7.1.6.2 vlan 254

7.2 Link aggregation 255
7.2.1 The "show" commands 255
7.2.1.1 show etherchannel 255
7.2.1.2 show interfaces etherchannel 256
7.2.1.3 show lacp 257
7.2.2 Commands in the interface configuration mode 257
7.2.2.1 channel-group 258
7.2.2.2 no channel-group 259
7.2.2.3 lacp timeout 259
7.2.2.4 no lacp timeout 260

7.3 Spanning Tree 261
7.3.1 The "show" commands 261
7.3.1.1 show spanning-tree 261
7.3.1.2 show spanning-tree active 262
7.3.1.3 show spanning-tree bridge 263
7.3.1.4 show spanning-tree detail 263
7.3.1.5 show spanning-tree interface 264
7.3.1.6 show spanning-tree interface layer2-gateway-port 265
7.3.1.7 show spanning-tree mst 266
7.3.1.8 show spanning-tree mst configuration 266
7.3.1.9 show spanning-tree mst interface 267
7.3.1.10 show spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility 268
7.3.1.11 show spanning-tree root 269
7.3.2 clear spanning-tree detected protocols 270
7.3.3 clear spanning-tree counters 270
7.3.4 Commands in the global configuration mode 271
7.3.4.1 spanning-tree 271
7.3.4.2 no spanning-tree 272
7.3.4.3 spanning-tree compatibility 273
7.3.4.4 no spanning-tree compatibility 274
7.3.4.5 spanning-tree mst configuration 274
7.3.4.6 spanning-tree mst instance-id root 275
7.3.4.7 no spanning-tree mst instance-id root 276
7.3.4.8 spanning-tree mst max-hops 277
7.3.4.9 no spanning-tree mst max-hops 278

7.3.4.10 spanning-tree priority 278
7.3.4.11 no spanning-tree priority 279
7.3.4.12 spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility 280
7.3.4.13 no spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility 281
7.3.4.14 spanning-tree rstp-plus 281
7.3.4.15 no spanning-tree rstp-plus 282
7.3.4.16 spanning-tree rstp-plus mrp-intercon-domain-id 283
7.3.4.17 Time settings for the Spanning Tree protocol 284
7.3.5 Commands in the interface configuration mode 286
7.3.5.1 spanning-tree 287
7.3.5.2 no spanning-tree 288
7.3.5.3 spanning-tree auto-edge 290
7.3.5.4 no spanning-tree auto-edge 290
7.3.5.5 spanning-tree bpdu-transmit 291
7.3.5.6 spanning-tree bpdu-receive 292
7.3.5.7 spanning-tree bpdufilter 292
7.3.5.8 spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port 293
7.3.5.9 no spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port 294
7.3.5.10 spanning-tree loop-guard 294
7.3.5.11 no spanning-tree loop-guard 295
7.3.5.12 spanning-tree mst 296
7.3.5.13 no spanning-tree mst 297
7.3.5.14 spanning-tree mst hello-time 298
7.3.5.15 no spanning-tree mst hello-time 299
7.3.5.16 spanning-tree mst PseudoRootId 300
7.3.5.17 no spanning-tree mst PseudoRootId 301
7.3.5.18 spanning-tree restricted-role 302
7.3.5.19 no spanning-tree restricted-role 302
7.3.5.20 spanning-tree restricted-tcn 303
7.3.5.21 no spanning-tree restricted-tcn 303
7.3.5.22 spanning-tree limited-tcn 304
7.3.5.23 no spanning-tree limited-tcn 305
7.3.6 Commands in the MSTP configuration mode 305
7.3.6.1 instance 306
7.3.6.2 no instance 307
7.3.6.3 name 308
7.3.6.4 no name 308
7.3.6.5 revision 309
7.3.6.6 no revision 310

7.4 Passive Listening 311
7.4.1 The "show" commands 311
7.4.1.1 show passive-listening 311
7.4.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 311
7.4.2.1 passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood 312
7.4.2.2 no passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood 312
7.4.2.3 passive-listening 313
7.4.2.4 no passive-listening 314

8 Network protocols 315

8.1 IPv4 protocol 316
8.1.1 The "show" commands 316
8.1.1.1 show ip gateway 316

8.1.1.2 show ip telnet 316
8.1.1.3 show dcp server 317
8.1.1.4 show dcp forwarding 317
8.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 318
8.1.2.1 ip gateway 319
8.1.2.2 no ip gateway 319
8.1.2.3 ip echo-reply 320
8.1.2.4 no ip echo-reply 321
8.1.2.5 telnet-server 321
8.1.2.6 no telnet-server 322
8.1.2.7 telnet-server port 322
8.1.2.8 no telnet-server port 323
8.1.2.9 dcp server 324
8.1.2.10 no dcp server 324
8.1.3 Commands in the interface configuration mode 325
8.1.3.1 dcp forwarding 326
8.1.3.2 ip address 326
8.1.3.3 no ip address 327
8.1.3.4 ip address dhcp 328

8.2 DHCP client 330
8.2.1 The "show" commands 330
8.2.1.1 show ip dhcp client stats 330
8.2.1.2 show ip dhcp client 330
8.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 331
8.2.2.1 ip dhcp config-file-request 331
8.2.2.2 no ip dhcp config-file-request 332
8.2.2.3 ip dhcp client mode 333
8.2.3 Commands in the Interface configuration mode 333
8.2.3.1 ip address dhcp 334
8.2.3.2 no ip address 334

8.3 DHCP server 336
8.3.1 The "show" commands 336
8.3.1.1 show ip dhcp-server bindings 336
8.3.1.2 show ip dhcp-server pools 337
8.3.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 337
8.3.2.1 ip dhcp-server 338
8.3.2.2 no ip dhcp-server 338
8.3.2.3 ip dhcp-server icmp-probe 339
8.3.2.4 no ip dhcp-server icmp-probe 340
8.3.2.5 ip dhcp-server pool 341
8.3.2.6 no ip dhcp-server pool 342
8.3.3 Commands in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode 342
8.3.3.1 lease-time 343
8.3.3.2 network 344
8.3.3.3 Option (IP address) 345
8.3.3.4 option value-string 346
8.3.3.5 no option 347
8.3.3.6 pool-enable 348
8.3.3.7 no pool-enable 349
8.3.3.8 ports 349
8.3.3.9 no ports 350

8.3.3.10 relay-information 351
8.3.3.11 no relay-information 352
8.3.3.12 set-interface 353
8.3.3.13 static-lease 354
8.3.3.14 no static-lease 355
8.3.3.15 host 356
8.3.3.16 no host 357

8.4 DHCP Relay 359
8.4.1 The "show" commands 359
8.4.1.1 show dhcp server 359
8.4.1.2 show ip dhcp relay information 360
8.4.2 Commands in the Global Configuration mode 360
8.4.2.1 ip dhcp server 361
8.4.2.2 no ip dhcp server 361
8.4.2.3 ip dhcp relay circuit-id option 362
8.4.2.4 ip dhcp relay information option 363
8.4.2.5 no ip dhcp relay information option 364
8.4.2.6 ip dhcp relay common-agent-address 364
8.4.2.7 no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address 365
8.4.2.8 ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface 366
8.4.2.9 no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface 367
8.4.2.10 service dhcp-relay 367
8.4.2.11 no service dhcp-relay 368
8.4.3 Commands in the Interface Configuration mode 369
8.4.3.1 ip dhcp relay circuit-id 369
8.4.3.2 no ip dhcp relay circuit-id 370
8.4.3.3 ip dhcp relay remote-id 371
8.4.3.4 no ip dhcp relay remote-id 371

8.5 SNMP 373
8.5.1 The "show" commands 374
8.5.1.1 show snmp 374
8.5.1.2 show snmp community 374
8.5.1.3 show snmp engineID 375
8.5.1.4 show snmp filter 375
8.5.1.5 show snmp group 376
8.5.1.6 show snmp group access 376
8.5.1.7 show snmp inform statistics 377
8.5.1.8 show snmp notif 377
8.5.1.9 show snmp targetaddr 378
8.5.1.10 show snmp targetparam 378
8.5.1.11 show snmp tcp 379
8.5.1.12 show snmp user 379
8.5.1.13 show snmp viewtree 380
8.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 380
8.5.2.1 snmpagent 381
8.5.2.2 no snmpagent 381
8.5.2.3 snmpagent port 382
8.5.2.4 no snmpagent port 382
8.5.2.5 snmp agent version 383
8.5.2.6 snmp access 384
8.5.2.7 no snmp access 385

8.5.2.8 snmp community index 386
8.5.2.9 no snmp community index 387
8.5.2.10 snmp engineid migrate 388
8.5.2.11 no snmp engineid migrate 389
8.5.2.12 snmp group 390
8.5.2.13 no snmp group 391
8.5.2.14 snmp notify 391
8.5.2.15 no snmp notify 392
8.5.2.16 snmp targetaddr 393
8.5.2.17 no snmp targetaddr 395
8.5.2.18 snmp targetparams 396
8.5.2.19 no snmp targetparams 398
8.5.2.20 snmp v1-v2 readonly 398
8.5.2.21 no snmp v1-v2 readonly 399
8.5.2.22 snmp user 400
8.5.2.23 no snmp user 401
8.5.2.24 snmp view 401
8.5.2.25 no snmp view 403

8.6 SMTP client 404
8.6.1 The "show" commands 404
8.6.1.1 show events smtp-server 404
8.6.1.2 show events sender email 404
8.6.1.3 show events smtp-port 405
8.6.2 Commands in the Events configuration mode 405
8.6.2.1 smtp-server 406
8.6.2.2 no smtp-server 407
8.6.2.3 sender mail-address 407
8.6.2.4 no sender mail-address 408
8.6.2.5 send test mail 409
8.6.3 Commands in SMTP server configuration mode 409
8.6.3.1 Introductory sentence for the SMTP server configuration mode 409
8.6.3.2 auth username 409
8.6.3.3 no auth username 410
8.6.3.4 port 411
8.6.3.5 no port 412
8.6.3.6 sender address 412
8.6.3.7 no sender address 413
8.6.3.8 receiver-address 414
8.6.3.9 no receiver-address 414
8.6.3.10 security 415
8.6.3.11 no security 416
8.6.3.12 smtp-server-enable 417
8.6.3.13 no smtp-server-enable 417

8.7 HTTP server 419
8.7.1 The "show" commands 419
8.7.1.1 show ip http server status 419
8.7.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 419
8.7.2.1 ip http 420
8.7.2.2 no ip http 420
8.7.2.3 ip http port 421
8.7.2.4 no ip http port 422

8.8 HTTPS server 423
8.8.1 The "show" commands 423
8.8.1.1 show ip http secure server status 423
8.8.1.2 show ssl server-cert 423
8.8.2 Commands in global configuration mode 424
8.8.2.1 ip http secure 424
8.8.2.2 no ip http secure 425
8.8.2.3 ip http secure port 425
8.8.2.4 no ip http secure port 426

8.9 ARP 427
8.9.1 The "show" commands 427
8.9.1.1 show ip arp 427
8.9.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 428
8.9.2.1 arp timeout 428
8.9.2.2 no arp timeout 429

8.10 SSH server 430
8.10.1 The "show" commands 430
8.10.1.1 show ip ssh 430
8.10.1.2 show ssh-fingerprint 430
8.10.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 431
8.10.2.1 ssh-server 431
8.10.2.2 no ssh-server 432
8.10.2.3 ssh-server port 432
8.10.2.4 no ssh-server port 433

9 Layer 2 management protocols 435

9.1 GARP 436
9.1.1 The "show" commands 436
9.1.1.1 show forward-all 436
9.1.1.2 show forward-unregistered 437
9.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 437
9.1.2.1 gmrp 438
9.1.2.2 no gmrp 438
9.1.2.3 gvrp 439
9.1.2.4 no gvrp 440

9.2 IGMP snooping 442
9.2.1 The "show" commands 442
9.2.1.1 show ip igmp snooping 442
9.2.1.2 show ip igmp snooping forwarding-database 443
9.2.1.3 show ip igmp snooping globals 443
9.2.1.4 show ip igmp snooping groups 444
9.2.1.5 show ip igmp snooping mrouter 445
9.2.1.6 show ip igmp snooping statistics 445
9.2.1.7 show ip igmp snooping switch-ip 446
9.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 446
9.2.2.1 ip igmp snooping version 447
9.2.2.2 ip igmp vlan-snooping 448
9.2.2.3 no ip igmp vlan-snooping 448
9.2.2.4 ip igmp snooping clear counters 449
9.2.2.5 ip igmp snooping switch-ip 449

9.2.2.6 snooping report-process config-level 450
9.2.2.7 ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval 451
9.2.2.8 no ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval 452

9.3 IGMP querier 453
9.3.1 Commands in the Global Configuration mode 453
9.3.1.1 ip igmp snooping querier 453
9.3.1.2 no ip igmp snooping querier 454
9.3.2 Commands in VLAN configuration mode 454
9.3.2.1 Introductory sentence for the VLAN configuration mode 454
9.3.2.2 ip igmp snooping querier 455
9.3.2.3 no ip igmp snooping querier 456

9.4 Ring redundancy and standby connection 457
9.4.1 clear hrp counters 458
9.4.2 clear ring-redundancy manager counters 458
9.4.3 clear standby counter 459
9.4.4 The "show" commands 460
9.4.4.1 show hrp counters 460
9.4.4.2 show linkcheck 461
9.4.4.3 show ring-redundancy 461
9.4.4.4 show ring-redundancy manager counters 462
9.4.5 Commands in the global configuration mode 462
9.4.5.1 ring-redundancy configuration 463
9.4.5.2 ring-redundancy hrpobserver 463
9.4.5.3 no ring-redundancy hrpobserver 464
9.4.5.4 ring-redundancy mode 465
9.4.5.5 no ring-redundancy 466
9.4.5.6 ring-redundancy dna-redundancy 467
9.4.5.7 no ring-redundancy dna-redundancy 467
9.4.5.8 ring-redundancy standby 468
9.4.5.9 no ring-redundancy standby 469
9.4.6 Commands in the redundancy configuration mode 469
9.4.6.1 linkcheck 470
9.4.6.2 no linkcheck 471
9.4.6.3 ring ports 472
9.4.6.4 standby connection-name 474
9.4.6.5 no standby connection-name 474
9.4.6.6 standby force-master 475
9.4.6.7 no standby force-master 475
9.4.6.8 standby port 476
9.4.6.9 no standby port 477
9.4.6.10 standby wait-for-partner 478
9.4.6.11 no standby wait-for-partner 478
9.4.6.12 mrpinterconnection 479
9.4.6.13 no mrpinterconnection 480
9.4.7 Commands in MRP Interconnection configuration mode 480
9.4.7.1 domain-id 481
9.4.7.2 domain-name 481
9.4.7.3 Interface 482
9.4.7.4 role 483
9.4.7.5 client-position 484
9.4.7.6 wait-manager 485

9.4.7.7 no wait-manager 486
9.4.7.8 Interconnection 486
9.5 Unicast 488
9.5.1 The "show" commands VLAN bridge) 488
9.5.1.1 show mac-address-table 488
9.5.1.2 show mac-address-table dynamic unicast 489
9.5.1.3 show mac-address-table static unicast 490
9.5.1.4 show unicast-block config 491
9.5.1.5 show unicast-mac flush config 492
9.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode (VLAN bridge) 492
9.5.2.1 mac-address-table static unicast 493
9.5.2.2 no mac-address-table static unicast 494
9.5.3 The "show" commands (Transparent Bridge) 495
9.5.3.1 show dot1d mac-address-table 495
9.5.3.2 show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast 496
9.5.3.3 show unicast-block config 496
9.5.3.4 show unicast-mac flush config 497
9.5.4 Commands in the global configuration mode (Transparent Bridge) 498
9.5.4.1 mac-address-table static unicast 498
9.5.4.2 no mac-address-table static unicast 499
9.6 Multicast 501
9.6.1 The "show" commands VLAN bridge) 501
9.6.1.1 show mac-address-table 501
9.6.1.2 show mac-address-table dynamic multicast 502
9.6.1.3 show mac-address-table static multicast 503
9.6.1.4 show multicast-block config 504
9.6.2 Commands in the global configuration mode (VLAN bridge) 505
9.6.2.1 mac-address-table static multicast 505
9.6.2.2 no mac-address-table static multicast 506
9.6.3 The "show" commands (Transparent Bridge) 507
9.6.3.1 show dot1d mac-address-table 507
9.6.3.2 show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast 508
9.6.3.3 show multicast-block config 509
9.6.4 Commands in the global configuration mode (Transparent Bridge) 509
9.6.4.1 mac-address-table static multicast 510
9.6.4.2 no mac-address-table static multicast 511
10 Layer 3 functions 513
10.1 NAT 513
10.1.1 The "show" commands 514
10.1.1.1 show ip nat config 514
10.1.1.2 show ip nat service 515
10.1.1.3 show ip nat service portrange 516
10.1.1.4 show ip nat summary 516
10.1.1.5 show ip nat 517
10.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 518
10.1.2.1 ip nat 518
10.1.2.2 no ip nat 519
10.1.2.3 ip nat timeout 519
10.1.2.4 no ip nat timeout 520
10.1.3 Commands in the Interface configuration mode 521

10.1.3.1 ip nat 521
10.1.3.2 no ip nat 522
10.1.3.3 ip nat napt 523
10.1.3.4 no ip nat napt 523
10.1.3.5 ip nat pool 524
10.1.3.6 no ip nat pool 525
10.1.3.7 ip nat service 525
10.1.3.8 no ip nat service 527
10.1.3.9 ip nat service portrange 528
10.1.3.10 no ip nat service portrange 529
10.1.3.11 ip nat static 530
10.1.3.12 no ip nat static 530

10.2 Single-Hop Inter-VLAN-Routing 532
10.2.1 Commands in the global configuration mode 532
10.2.1.1 ip single-hop inter-vlan-routing 532
10.2.1.2 no ip single-hop inter-vlan-routing 533

11 Load control 535

11.1 Rate control 536
11.1.1 The "show" commands 536
11.1.1.1 show rate-limit output 536
11.1.2 Commands in the interface configuration mode 537
11.1.2.1 rate-limit output 537
11.1.2.2 no rate-limit output 538
11.1.2.3 storm-control 539
11.1.2.4 no storm-control 540
11.1.2.5 storm-control level 541
11.1.2.6 no storm-control level 541

11.2 Static MAC filtering 543
11.2.1 network-filtering 543
11.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode (VLAN bridge) 544
11.2.2.1 mac-address-table static multicast 544
11.2.2.2 no mac-address-table static multicast 545
11.2.2.3 mac-address-table static unicast 546
11.2.2.4 no mac-address-table static unicast 547
11.2.3 Commands in the global configuration mode (Transparent Bridge) 548
11.2.3.1 mac-address-table static multicast 548
11.2.3.2 no mac-address-table static multicast 549
11.2.3.3 mac-address-table static unicast 550
11.2.3.4 no mac-address-table static unicast 551
11.2.4 Commands in the interface configuration mode 552
11.2.4.1 switchport ingress-filter 552
11.2.4.2 no switchport ingress-filter 553

11.3 Dynamic MAC aging 555
11.3.1 The "show" commands 555
11.3.1.1 show mac-address-table aging-time 555
11.3.1.2 show mac-address-table aging-status 555
11.3.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 556
11.3.2.1 mac-address-table aging-time 556
11.3.2.2 no mac-address-table aging-time 557
11.3.2.3 mac-address-table aging 558

11.3.2.4 no mac-address-table aging 558

11.4 Flow control 560
11.4.1 The "show" commands 560
11.4.1.1 show flow-control 560
11.4.2 Commands in the interface configuration mode 561
11.4.2.1 flowcontrol 561

11.5 Service classes 563
11.5.1 The "show" commands 563
11.5.1.1 show qos agent-priority 563
11.5.1.2 show qos broadcast-priority 563
11.5.1.3 show qos cos-map 564
11.5.1.4 show qos cos-remap 565
11.5.1.5 show qos dscp-map 565
11.5.1.6 show qos scheduling mode 566
11.5.1.7 show qos-trust-mode 566
11.5.2 Commands in the Global configuration mode 567
11.5.2.1 qos 567
11.5.3 Commands in the QOS configuration mode 568
11.5.3.1 agent-priority 569
11.5.3.2 no agent-priority 569
11.5.3.3 broadcast-priority 570
11.5.3.4 no broadcast-priority 571
11.5.3.5 cos-map 572
11.5.3.6 cos-remap 573
11.5.3.7 no cos-remap 574
11.5.3.8 cos-remap-enable 574
11.5.3.9 no cos-remap-enable 575
11.5.3.10 dscp-map 576
11.5.3.11 qos-trust-mode 577
11.5.3.12 scheduling mode 578

12 Security and authentication 581

12.1 User management 582
12.1.1 The "show" commands 582
12.1.1.1 show password-policy 582
12.1.1.2 show users 582
12.1.1.3 show user-accounts 583
12.1.2 change password 583
12.1.3 whoami 584
12.1.4 Commands in the global configuration mode 585
12.1.4.1 password-policy 585
12.1.4.2 user-account 586
12.1.4.3 no user-account 588
12.1.4.4 user-account-ext 589
12.1.4.5 no user-account-ext 590
12.1.4.6 role 591
12.1.4.7 no role 592
12.1.4.8 user-group 593
12.1.4.9 no user-group 595
12.1.4.10 username 595

12.2 RADIUS client 598

12.2.1 The "show" commands 598
12.2.1.1 show radius statistics 598
12.2.1.2 show radius server 598
12.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 599
12.2.2.1 login authentication 599
12.2.2.2 no login authentication 600
12.2.2.3 radius authorization-mode 601
12.2.2.4 radius disconnect-packet 602
12.2.2.5 no radius disconnect-packet 603
12.2.2.6 radius-server 603
12.2.2.7 no radius-server 605

12.3 Management Access Control List 607
12.3.1 The "show" commands 607
12.3.1.1 show authorized-managers 607
12.3.2 Commands in the Global configuration mode 608
12.3.2.1 authorized-manager 608
12.3.2.2 no authorized-manager 608
12.3.2.3 authorized-manager ip-source 609
12.3.2.4 no authorized-manager ip-source 611

12.4 Port Access Control List Locked Ports 613
12.4.1 The "show" commands 613
12.4.1.1 show lock port 613
12.4.2 Commands in the Global configuration mode 614
12.4.2.1 clear-all-static-unicast 614
12.4.2.2 auto-learn 615
12.4.3 Commands in the interface configuration mode 615
12.4.3.1 switchport lock 616
12.4.3.2 no switchport lock 616
12.4.4 Commands in the AUTOLEARN mode 617
12.4.4.1 start 617
12.4.4.2 stop 618

12.5 Port Based Network Access Control 619
12.5.1 The "show" commands 619
12.5.1.1 show dot1x 619
12.5.1.2 show dot1x guest-vlan mac-info 620
12.5.1.3 show dot1x mac-auth mac-info 620
12.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 621
12.5.2.1 dot1x guest-vlan 621
12.5.2.2 no dot1x guest-vlan 622
12.5.2.3 dot1x mac-auth 622
12.5.2.4 no dot1x mac-auth 623
12.5.3 Commands in the interface configuration mode 624
12.5.3.1 dot1x guest-vlan 624
12.5.3.2 no dot1x guest-vlan 625
12.5.3.3 dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id 625
12.5.3.4 no dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id 626
12.5.3.5 dot1x guest-vlan reset 627
12.5.3.6 set dot1x guest-vlan mac-addr count 627
12.5.3.7 dot1x mac-auth 628
12.5.3.8 no dot1x mac-auth 629
12.5.3.9 dot1x mac-auth port reset 630

12.5.3.10 dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign 630
12.5.3.11 no dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign 631
12.5.3.12 set dot1x mac-auth mac-addr count 632
12.5.3.13 dot1x port-control 633
12.5.3.14 no dot1x port-control 634
12.5.3.15 dot1x reauthentication 634
12.5.3.16 no dot1x reauthentication 635

13 Diagnostics 637

13.1 Event and fault handling 638
13.1.1 logging console 638
13.1.2 no logging console 638
13.1.3 The "show" commands 639
13.1.3.1 show events config 639
13.1.3.2 show events severity 640
13.1.3.3 show events faults config 640
13.1.3.4 show events faults status 641
13.1.3.5 show startup-information 642
13.1.3.6 show logbook 642
13.1.3.7 show fault counter 643
13.1.3.8 show cabletest interface 643
13.1.3.9 show interface transceiver details 644
13.1.3.10 show power-line-state 645
13.1.4 clear logbook 645
13.1.5 clear fault counter 646
13.1.6 fault report ack 646
13.1.7 Commands in the global configuration mode 647
13.1.7.1 events 647
13.1.7.2 cabletest interface 648
13.1.8 Commands in the Events configuration mode 649
13.1.8.1 add log 649
13.1.8.2 client config 650
13.1.8.3 no client config 651
13.1.8.4 event config 652
13.1.8.5 no event config 655
13.1.8.6 severity 656
13.1.8.7 no severity 657
13.1.8.8 power 658
13.1.8.9 no power 659
13.1.8.10 link 660
13.1.8.11 no link 661
13.1.8.12 syslogserver 662
13.1.8.13 no syslogserver 663
13.1.8.14 hrp-redundancy-loss 663
13.1.8.15 no hrp-redundancy-loss 664

13.2 FMP 665
13.2.1 The "show" commands 665
13.2.1.1 show fmp limit 665
13.2.1.2 show fmp status 666
13.2.2 Commands in the Interface Configuration mode 667
13.2.2.1 fmp 667
13.2.2.2 no fmp 668

13.2.2.3 fmp power-loss 669
13.2.2.4 fmp rx-power 670

13.3 Syslog client 671
13.3.1 The "show" commands 671
13.3.1.1 show events syslogserver 671
13.3.2 Commands in the Events configuration mode 671
13.3.2.1 syslogserver 672
13.3.2.2 no syslogserver 673

13.4 RMON 674
13.4.1 The "show" commands 674
13.4.1.1 show rmon 674
13.4.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 675
13.4.2.1 rmon 676
13.4.2.2 no rmon 676
13.4.2.3 rmon alarm 677
13.4.2.4 no rmon alarm 679
13.4.2.5 rmon event 679
13.4.2.6 no rmon event 680
13.4.3 Commands in the interface configuration mode 681
13.4.3.1 rmon collection stats 681
13.4.3.2 no rmon collection stats 682
13.4.3.3 rmon collection history 683
13.4.3.4 no rmon collection history 684

13.5 Port Mirroring 685
13.5.1 The "show" commands 685
13.5.1.1 show monitor 685
13.5.1.2 show monitor barrier 686
13.5.1.3 show monitor session 686
13.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 687
13.5.2.1 monitor 687
13.5.2.2 no monitor 688
13.5.2.3 monitor barrier enabled 689
13.5.2.4 no monitor barrier enabled 690
13.5.2.5 monitor session destination 690
13.5.2.6 no monitor session destination 691
13.5.2.7 monitor session source 692
13.5.2.8 no monitor session source 693
13.5.2.9 no monitor session 694

13.6 Loop detection 696
13.6.1 The "show" commands 696
13.6.1.1 show loopd 696
13.6.1.2 show loopd interface 697
13.6.2 Commands in the global configuration mode 698
13.6.2.1 loopd 698
13.6.2.2 no loopd 699
13.6.2.3 loopd vlan mode 700
13.6.2.4 no loopd vlan mode 700
13.6.3 Commands in the Interface Configuration mode 701
13.6.3.1 loopd {blocked | forwarder | sender} 701
13.6.3.2 loopd {tx-interval | detect-threshold | reaction-timeout} 702

13.6.3.3 loopd port reset 703
13.6.3.4 no loopd port reset 704
13.6.3.5 loopd reaction local 705
13.6.3.6 no loopd reaction local 705
13.6.3.7 loopd reaction remote 706
13.6.3.8 no loopd reaction remote 707
Index **709**

Introduction

1

Validity of this configuration manual

This Configuration Manual covers the following products:

- SCALANCE XB-200
- SCALANCE XC-200
- SCALANCE XF-200BA
- SCALANCE XP-200
- SCALANCE XR-300WG

Below, the products are also called IE switch, device or network component.

There are two variants of some devices with different article numbers. The two variants differ only in their factory settings. All other properties are identical.

This Configuration Manual applies to the following software versions:

- SCALANCE XB-200 firmware as of version 4.2
- SCALANCE XC-200 firmware as of version 4.2
- SCALANCE XF-200BA firmware as of version 4.2
- SCALANCE XP-200 firmware as of version 4.2
- SCALANCE XR-300WG firmware as of version 4.2

Factory settings

PROFINET variants

- Industrial Ethernet protocol: PROFINET
- Base Bridge Mode: 802.1D transparent bridge
- Redundancy mechanism: Ring redundancy
- Trust mode: Trust CoS
- IGMP Snooping/IGMP Querier: Off
- IPv4 Address Collision Detection: Never give up

EtherNet/IP variants

- Industrial Ethernet protocol: EtherNet/IP
- Base Bridge Mode: 802.1Q VLAN Bridge
- Redundancy mechanism: RSTP
- Trust mode: Trust CoS-DSCP

- IGMP Snooping/IGMP Querier: On
- IPv4 Address Collision Detection: Attempt to defend

Industrial Ethernet profile

- Industrial Ethernet protocol: PROFINET
- Base Bridge Mode: 802.1Q VLAN Bridge
- Redundancy mechanism: RSTP
- Trust mode: Trust CoS-DSCP
- IGMP Snooping/IGMP Querier: Off
- IPv4 Address Collision Detection: Never give up

Purpose of the Configuration Manual

This Configuration Manual is intended to provide you with the information you require to install, commission and operate IE switches. It provides you with the information you require to configure the IE switches.

Orientation in the documentation

Apart from the configuration manual you are currently reading, the products also have the following documentation:

- Configuration manual "SCALANCE XB-200/XC-200/XF-200BA/XP-200/XR-300WG Web Based Management""
  This document is intended to provide you with the information you require to commission and configure IE switches using the Web Based Management.
- Operating Instructions "SCALANCE XB-200", "SCALANCE XC-200", "SCALANCE XF-200BA", "SCALANCE XP-200" and "SCALANCE XR-300WG"
  These documents contain information on installing, connecting up and approvals for the products.

You will find the documentation here:

- On the data medium that ships with some products:
  - Product CD / product DVD
  - SIMATIC NET Manual Collection
- On the Internet pages of Siemens Industry Online Support at.
  - SCALANCE XB-200 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/15291/man)
  - SCALANCE XC-200 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/24185/man)
  - SCALANCE XF-200BA (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/15287/man)
  - SCALANCE XP-200 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/21869/man)
  - SCALANCE XR-300WG (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/15296/man)

Further documentation

In the system manuals "Industrial Ethernet / PROFINET Industrial Ethernet" and "Industrial Ethernet / PROFINET passive network components", you will find information on other SIMATIC NET products that you can operate along with the devices of this product line in an Industrial Ethernet network.

There, you will find among other things optical performance data of the communications partner that you require for the installation.

You will find the system manuals here:

- On the data medium that ships with some products:
  - Product CD / product DVD
  - SIMATIC NET Manual Collection
- On the Internet pages of Siemens Industry Online Support:
  - Industrial Ethernet / PROFINET Industrial Ethernet System Manual (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/27069465)
  - Industrial Ethernet / PROFINET Passive Network Components System Manual (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/84922825)

SIMATIC NET manuals

You will find the SIMATIC NET manuals here:

- On the data medium that ships with some products:
  - Product CD / product DVD
  - SIMATIC NET Manual Collection
- On the Internet pages of Siemens Industry Online Support (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/15247).

What's new as of version 4.2?

Below, you will find an overview of the most important function expansions:

- Configurable port number for HTTP (Page 421), SSH (Page 432) and TELNET (Page 322)
- Additional options for shutting down a port: Power down (Page 104)
- Redundant Y topologies are possible with two devices of the type SCALANCE XF204-2BA DNA.
- MRP Interconnection (Page 480) for the SCALANCE XC-200, SCALANCE XF-200BA and SCALANCE XP-200 device groups
- Autocrossing also with permanently set transmission speed
- NOA (NAMUR Open Architecture) for the SCALANCE XC-200G EEC (Page 101) device group
- AES128 as privacy protocol for SNMPv3 users (Page 400)
- Extension of the SMTP client (security) (Page 415)

- PTP (Page 191) for the SCALANCE XC-200G device group
- Restart the device at a specified time (Page 126)
- Support of additional MIB blocks
- Customizable login text (Page 109) (LoginWelcomeMessage)
- Possibility to configure the PVID for ring ports (Page 235)

SIMATIC NET glossary

Explanations of many of the specialist terms used in this documentation can be found in the SIMATIC NET glossary.

You will find the SIMATIC NET glossary on the Internet at the following address:

50305045 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/50305045)

Security information

Siemens provides products and solutions with industrial security functions that support the secure operation of plants, systems, machines and networks.

In order to protect plants, systems, machines and networks against cyber threats, it is necessary to implement – and continuously maintain – a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial security concept. Siemens' products and solutions constitute one element of such a concept.

Customers are responsible for preventing unauthorized access to their plants, systems, machines and networks. Such systems, machines and components should only be connected to an enterprise network or the internet if and to the extent such a connection is necessary and only when appropriate security measures (e.g. firewalls and/or network segmentation) are in place.

For additional information on industrial security measures that may be implemented, please visit
https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity (https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity)

Siemens' products and solutions undergo continuous development to make them more secure. Siemens strongly recommends that product updates are applied as soon as they are available and that the latest product versions are used. Use of product versions that are no longer supported, and failure to apply the latest updates may increase customers' exposure to cyber threats.

To stay informed about product updates, subscribe to the Siemens Industrial Security RSS Feed under
https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity (https://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity)

License conditions

Note

Open source software

Read the license conditions for open source software carefully before using the product.

You can download the license conditions in the WBM on the "System > Load&Save > Copyright" page.

Trademarks

The following and possibly other names not identified by the registered trademark sign ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG:

SIMATIC NET, SCALANCE, C-PLUG, OLM

Firmware

The firmware is signed and encrypted. This ensures that only firmware created by Siemens can be downloaded to the device.

General information

2

2.1 System functions hardware equipment

Availability of the system functions

The following table shows the availability of the system functions on the IE switches. Note that all functions are described in this configuration manual and in the online help. Depending on your IE switch, some functions are not available.

We reserve the right to make technical changes.

		SCALANCE XB-200	SCALANCE XR-300WG	SCALANCE XC-200	SCALANCE XP-200	SCALANCE XF-200BA
Information	ARP table	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Log table	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Ethernet Statistics	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Diagnostics (temperature)	-	✓	✓	✓	✓
System	SMTP client	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	DHCP client	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	DHCP server	✓ 1)	✓ 1)	✓	✓	✓
	SNMP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Manual time setting	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	DST	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	SNTP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	NTP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	SIMATIC Time Client	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Auto logout	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Syslog Client	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	NOA switch functionality	-	-	✓ 4)	-	-
	Fault monitoring	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	PROFINET	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	EtherNet/IP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓ 2)
	Cable tester	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	SFP Diagnostics	-	✓	✓	-	-

		SCALANCE XB-200	SCALANCE XR-300WG	SCALANCE XC-200	SCALANCE XP-200	SCALANCE XF-200BA
Layer 2	Sending priorities	-	-	✓	✓	✓
	CoS Map	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	DSCP Mapping	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	QoS prioritization	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	CoS port reassignment	-	-	✓	✓	✓
	Load control	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	GVRP	-	-	✓	✓	✓
	Port-based VLAN	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓ 2)
	Private VLAN	-	-	✓	✓	-
	Provider bridge	-	-	✓	✓	-
	Switch Port VLAN Trunk	-	-	✓	✓	✓ 2)
	Port-based mirroring	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Dynamic MAC aging	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Ring redundancy	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	H-Sync support	-	-	✓	✓	✓
	S2 devices	-	-	✓	✓	✓
	CiR/H-CiR support	-	-	✓	✓	✓
	Ring with RSTP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Standby (HRP)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Observer (HRP)	-	-	✓	✓	✓
	Link Check	✓	✓	✓	-	✓
	MRP Interconnection	-	-	✓	✓	✓
	Spanning Tree	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	RSTP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	RSTP+	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	MSTP	-	-	✓	✓	-
	Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Loop detection	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Link aggregation	-	-	✓	✓	✓
	DCP forwarding	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	LLDP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Fiber monitoring	-	-	✓	-	-
	Unicast filter	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Locked ports	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Unicast learning	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Unicast blocking	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Multicast groups	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	IGMP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	GMRP	-	-	✓	✓	✓
	Multicast blocking	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Broadcast blocking	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

		SCALANCE XB-200	SCALANCE XR-300WG	SCALANCE XC-200	SCALANCE XP-200	SCALANCE XF-200BA
	PTP	-	-	✓ 3)	-	-
	RMON	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	RMON history	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Layer 3	Single-Hop Inter-VLAN-Routing	-	-	✓	✓	-
	DHCP relay agent	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Common agent address	-	-	✓	✓	-
	NAT/NAPT	-	-	✓	✓	-
Security	Users	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Passwords	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	RADIUS authentication	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	MAC authentication	-	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Guest VLAN	-	-	✓	✓	✓
	802.1X reauthentication	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Management ACL	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

1) Restricted

2) Not with DNA devices

3) Only SCALANCE XC-200G

4) Only SCALANCE XC-200G EEC

Availability of hardware

The following table shows the hardware of the IE switches.

We reserve the right to make technical changes.

	SCALANCE XB-200	SCALANCE XR-300WG	SCALANCE XC-200	SCALANCE XP-200	SCALANCE XF-200BA
C-PLUG support	-	-	✓	✓	✓
SELECT/SET button	-	-	✓ 2) 3)	✓ 3)	-
RESET button	✓ 2)	✓ 2)	-	✓ 2)	-
SET button	-	-	-	-	✓ 2)
Signaling contact	-	-	✓	✓	✓
Serial interface	✓	✓	✓	✓	-
Display modes	-	-	✓	✓	-
Pluggable transceiver slots	-	-	✓	-	-
Combo ports	-	✓	✓	-	-
Bus adapter slots	-	-	-	-	✓
Power over Ethernet	-	✓ 1)	✓ 1)	✓ 1)	-

1) "PoE" identifier in device name

Function of the buttons:

2) Restore Factory Defaults

3) Set Fault Mask

2.2 Configuration limits

Configuration limits of the device

The following table lists the configuration limits for Web Based Management and the Command Line Interface of the device.

Depending on your IE switch, some functions are not available.

	Configurable function	Maximum number				
		SCALANCE XB-200	SCALANCE XR-300WG	SCALANCE XC-200	SCALANCE XP-200	SCALANCE XF-200BA
System	Maximum frame size (ingress)	1632 bytes	2048 bytes	1632/2048 bytes [7]	1632 bytes	1632 bytes
	Syslog server	3				
	E-mail server	3				
	DHCP pools	16 [1]	28 [1]	24		
	IPv4 addresses per DHCP pool	1		24		
	IPv4 addresses managed by the DHCP server (dynamic + static)	16 [1]	28 [1]	576		
	DHCP static assignments per DHCP pool	-		24		
	SNMPv1 trap recipient	10				
	SNTP server	1				
	NTP server	-		1 [8]		
	Agent/TIA interfaces [2]	1				
	Devices displayed via DCP Discovery	100				

	Configurable function	Maximum number				
		SCALANCE XB-200	SCALANCE XR-300WG	SCALANCE XC-200	SCALANCE XP-200	SCALANCE XF-200BA
Layer 2	QoS priority queues	4		4/8 [6]	4	
	Virtual LANs (port-based, including VLAN 1)	257 [3] [9]				
	Private VLAN	-		1		-
	Primary PVLANs	-		1		-
	Secondary isolated PVLANs	-		24		-
	Secondary community PVLANs	-		256		-
	Mirroring sessions	1				
	Standby ports	1				
	Configured MRP Interconnection connections	-		64		
	Enabled MRP Interconnection connections	-		1		
	Multiple Spanning Tree instances	-		4		-
	Link aggregations	-		4/8 [5]		
	Ports in a link aggregation	-		8		4
	Static unicast addresses	128				
	Static multicast addresses without activated GMRP	256				
	Static multicast addresses with activated GMRP	-		50		
	Addresses learned using IGMP snooping	512				
Layer 3	VLAN IP interfaces	1		24		1
	DHCP Relay Agent interfaces	1		24		1
	DHCP Relay Agent server	4				
	NAT interfaces	-		1		-
	Dynamic NAT configurations (pools)			100		
	Static NAT configurations	-		100		-
Security	Users	30 (incl. user preset in the factory "admin")				
	Roles	29				
	Groups	32				
	IP addresses from RADIUS servers	4				
	Simultaneous MAC authentications (authenticated and blocked) per device [4]	4000				
	Simultaneous MAC authentications (authenticated and blocked) per port (configurable) [4]	100				
	Management ACLs (access rules for management)	10				

1) With the SCALANCE XB-200 and SCALANCE XR-300WG, the number of DHCP pools and manageable IPv4 addresses depends on the number of ports. The number of ports corresponds to the maximum number of DHCP pools and manageable IPv4 addresses.

2) This is an IP interface.

3) Devices with Y functionality do not support VLANs

4) If the maximum number of MAC authentications per device is exceeded, all MAC authentications of the port at which the value was exceeded are reset.
If the maximum number of MAC authentications per port is exceeded, all MAC authentications of the port are reset

5) The following applies to devices of the SCALANCE XC-200 and SCALANCE XP-200 product groups:
Because a link aggregation consists of at least 2 ports, the maximum number of link aggregations depends on the number of ports. A maximum of 4 link aggregations is possible in devices with up to 8 ports and a maximum of 8 link aggregations is possible in devices with more than 8 ports.

6) The devices of the SCALANCE XC-200G product group support 8 queues. All other XC-200 devices support 4 queues.

7) With the following devices, the maximum frame size (ingress) is 2048 bytes:
- Gigabit variants (suffix "G" in type designation)
- Devices with combo ports (suffix "C" in type designation)
- PoE variants (suffix "PoE" in type designation)

With all other XC-200 devices, it is 1632 bytes.

8) Maximum number of NTP/SNTP servers that can be configured for a SCALANCE X-200.

9) To avoid possible network interference, configure a maximum of 25 VLANs on ring nodes (MRP ring, HRP ring, redundant coupling). Note that this is a recommendation. There is no automatic limitation in the configuration.

2.3 Features not supported

The following features are not supported by the IE switches with firmware version 4.2:

- FQDN
- IPv6
- Layer 3 routing
- Loopback
- PIM

Even if these features are listed as parameters in the documentation and are displayed by the help functions `help` and `?` you cannot execute them with a SCALANCE XB-200, SCALANCE XC-200, SCALANCE XF-200BA, SCALANCE XP-200 and SCALANCE XR-300WG.

2.4 Initial assignment of an IP address

Configuration options

An initial IP address for an IE switch cannot be assigned using Web Based Management (WBM) because this configuration tool can only be used if an IP address already exists.

The following options are available to assign an IP address to an unconfigured device:

- **DHCP** (factory setting)
- **Primary Setup Tool** (PST)
  - To be able to assign an IP address to the IE switch with the PST, it must be possible to reach the IE switch via Ethernet.
  - You will find the PST on the Internet pages of Siemens Industry Online Support under the entry ID 19440762 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/19440762).
  - For further information about assigning the IP address with the PST, refer to the documentation "Primary Setup Tool (PST)".
- **STEP 7**
  In STEP 7, you can configure the topology, the device name and the IP address. If you connect an unconfigured IE switch to the controller, the controller assigns the configured device name and the IP address to the IE switch automatically.
  - **STEP 7**
    SCALANCE XB-200: V5.5.4 and higher
    SCALANCE XP-200: As of V5.5.4 HF9
    SCALANCE XC-200: V5.5.4 HF11 and higher
    SCALANCE XR-300WG: As of V5.6
    SCALANCE XF-200BA: As of V5.6 HF3
    SCALANCE XC-200G: As of V5.6 HSP11
    For further information on the assignment of the IP address using STEP 7 refer to the documentation "Configuring Hardware and Communication Connections STEP 7", in the section "Steps For Configuring a PROFINET IO System".
  - **STEP 7 Basic or Professional**
    SCALANCE XB-200: V13 SP1 and higher
    SCALANCE XC-200: V14 and higher
    SCALANCE XP-200: V14 and higher
    SCALANCE XR-300WG: As of V15
    SCALANCE XF-200BA: As of V15
    SCALANCE XC-200G, devices with 8 ports: As of V15
    SCALANCE XC-200G, devices with more than 8 ports: As of V16
    For further information on assigning the IP address using STEP 7, refer to the online help "Information system", section "Addressing PROFINET devices".

- CLI via the serial interface
  For additional information on assigning the IP address via the serial interface, refer to the operating instructions for the relevant device. See also section "Introduction", paragraph "Orientation in the documentation".
- NCM PC
  For further information on assigning the IP address using NCM PC, refer to the documentation "Commissioning PC stations - Manual and Quick Start", in the section "Creating a PROFINET IO system".

Note

When the product ships and after factory settings are restored, DHCP is enabled. If a DHCP server is available in the local area network, and this responds to the DHCP request of an IE switch, the IP address, subnet mask and gateway are assigned automatically when the device first starts up.

2.5 Working with the Command Line Interface (CLI)

Introduction

The CLI (Command Line Interface) offers advanced configuration options. Nevertheless, you should read the detailed explanations of the parameters in the relevant configuration manual "Web Based Management".

The CLI allows remote configuration over Telnet.

Note

Use with Windows 7

If you want to access the Command Line Interface in Windows 7, make sure that the functions required for this are enabled in Windows 7.

Starting the CLI in a Windows console

Note

Requirement for use of the CLI

You should only use the command line interface if you are an experienced user.

Even commands that bring about fundamental changes to the configuration are executed without a prompt for confirmation.

Errors in the configuration can mean that no further operation is possible in the entire network.

Note

Command sets depend on the logged-on user. Changing configuration data is possible only with the "admin" role.

Follow the steps outlined below to start the Command Line Interface in a Windows console:

1. Open a Windows console and type in the command "telnet" followed by the IP address of the device you are configuring:
   `C:\>telnet <IP address>`
2. Log in.

As an alternative, you can also enter the command "telnet" followed by the IP address of the device you are configuring in the Start > Run menu.

Logging in

Log in to a device with factory settings

When you log in for the first time or after restoring the factory settings, follow these steps:

1. Start a Windows console and execute the following command:
   `telnet <IP-Adresse>`
   The command prompt is: "`Login:`".
2. Enter the default user name "admin" preset at the factory and confirm with "Enter".
   The command prompt is: "`Password:`".
   With this user account, you can change the settings of the device (read and write access to the configuration data).
3. Enter the password of the user "admin" preset at the factory: "admin" and confirm with "Enter".
   The command prompt is: "`Default admin user to be changed (y/n)?`".
   You can rename the user preset in the factory "admin" once. Afterwards, renaming "admin" is no longer possible.
   - To rename the user preset in the factory "admin", enter "`y`" and confirm with "Enter".
     The command prompt is: "`Enter a new non-default admin username:`".
     Continue to the next step.
   - If you do not wish to change the name of the user, enter "`n`" and confirm with "Enter".
     The command prompt is: "`Enter a new non-default admin password:`".
     Skip the next two steps.
4. Enter a new user name and confirm with "Enter". The new user name has at least 8 and maximum 250 characters.
   The command prompt is: "`Confirm new non-default admin username:`".
5. Enter the new user name again and confirm with "Enter".
   The command prompt is: "`Enter a new non-default admin username:`".
6. Enter a new password and confirm with "Enter".
   The new password must meet the following password policies:
   - Password length: at least 8 characters, maximum 32 characters
   - At least 1 uppercase letter
   - At least 1 special character
   - At least 1 number

   The command prompt is: "`Confirm new non-default admin password:`".
7. Enter the new password again and confirm with "Enter".
   Once you have logged in successfully, the command prompt is: "`CLI#`".

Log in to a configured device

1. Start a Windows console and execute the following command:
   `telnet <IP-Adresse>`
   The command prompt is "`Login:`".
2. Enter the user name and confirm with "Enter".
   The command prompt is "`Password:`".
3. Enter the password of the user and confirm with "Enter".
   Once you have logged in successfully, the command prompt is: "`CLI#`".

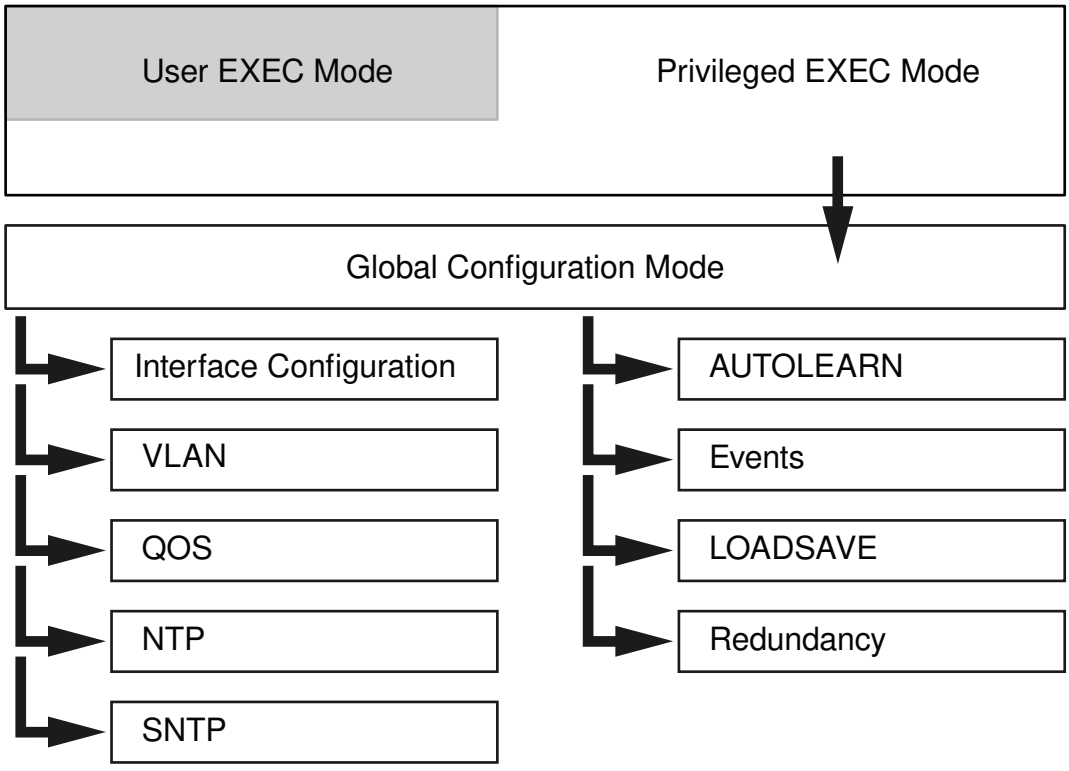
2.6 Protection from brute force attacks

To protect against brute force attacks, login to the device is denied for a user or for the IP address of a user after 11 failed login attempts.

2.7 Structure of the Command Line Interface

Grouping of the commands in the various modes

The commands of the Command Line Interface are grouped according to various modes. Apart from a few exceptions (`help`, `exit`), commands can only be called up in the mode to which they are assigned. This grouping allows different levels of access rights for each individual group of commands. The following graphic is an overview of the available modes.



User EXEC mode

This mode is active after you log in with the role "`user`" in a console window. In this mode, you can use `show` commands to display the current values of configuration parameters. It is not possible to modify parameters in this mode.

To be able to modify configuration parameters, you need to change to the Privileged EXEC mode.

Note

Default user "user" set in the factory

As of firmware version 2.1 the default user set in the factory "user" is no longer available when the product ships.

If you update a device to the firmware V2.1 the default user set in the factory "user" is initially still available. If you reset the device to the factory settings ("Restore Factory Defaults and Restart") the default user set in the factory "user" is deleted.

You can create new users with the role "user".

Privileged EXEC mode

You change to this mode if you log in with the name "admin" or enter the command `enable` in User EXEC mode. There are two ways of exiting the Privileged EXEC mode:

1. The `exit` command logs you out; the Login Prompt prompt appears.
2. The `disable` command brings you back one level from the Privileged EXEC mode to the User EXEC mode. (The `disable` command is not available in the User EXEC mode.)

Global configuration mode

In this mode, you can make basic configuration settings. In addition to this, you can also call up modes for the configuration of special interfaces or functions, for example to configure a VLAN. You change to this mode by entering `configure terminal` in the Privileged EXEC mode. To exit this mode, enter `end`.

Other configuration modes

From the Global configuration mode, you can change to other configuration modes for special tasks. These are either general configuration modes (for example line configuration, interface configuration) or protocol-specific configuration modes (SNTP, NTP).

2.8 The CLI command prompt

Overview

The Command Line Interface prompt shows the following information:

- The mode in which the CLI is currently operating.
  Most commands can only be called in a particular mode. You should therefore check the CLI mode based on the command prompt.
  - User Exec mode: `CLI>`
  - Privileged Exec mode and configuration modes: `CLI(...)#`

Note

Changing the system name

When you change the system name, the command prompt also changes. The corresponding system name is then displayed instead of "`CLI`".

- The selected interface when the CLI is in an Interface Configuration mode.
  In the Interface Configuration mode, the parameters are configured for one specific interface. The command prompt is displayed in the form `CLI(config-if-$$$)#` where the placeholder `$$$` is replaced by the identifier of the Interface. You select the Interface by setting suitable parameters for the `interface` command.
- An identifier when the Trial mode is enabled.
  If you first test changes to the configuration and then want to discard them, disable the Auto save function with the `no auto-save` command. You are then in Trial mode.
  Changes to the configuration that you have not saved are indicated by an asterisk in front of the command prompt: `*CLI(...)#`.
  You save the changes to the configuration with the command `write startup-config`.
  With the `auto-save` command, you enable the Auto save function again.

Note

Upper and lower case

The Command Line Interface does not distinguish between upper case and lower case letters.

Make sure, however, that names used by the operating system or other programs are correctly written.

Blank

To use blanks in a text, enter the text in quotes, for example "H e l l o"

2.9 Symbols of the CLI commands

Symbols for representing CLI commands

When setting parameters for CLI commands, the following characters are used:

Character	Meaning	
< ... >	mandatory parameter	Instead of the expression in parenthesis, you must enter a value
[...]	optional parameter	Instead of the expression in parenthesis, you can enter a value
(...)	Value or range of values	Enter a value to replace the expression in parenthesis
(... - ...)	Range of values	Enter a value from this range
{ ... }	Selection list	Select one more elements from the list
{ ... | ... }	exclusive selection	Select exactly one element from this list

These characters are used in combinations to describe mandatory and optional entries.

There is a general description of some of these combinations below:

Character combinations	Meaning
< variable >	Instead of the expression in parentheses<>, enter a permitted value
< variable (a - b) >	Instead of the expression in parentheses <>, enter a value from the range "a" to "b"
[< variable 1 >< variable 2 >]	The parameter pair is optional. If you use the parameter assignment, you need to enter a permitted value to replace both expressions in parenthesis <>
[keyword < variable (a - b)>]	The parameter assignment is optional. If you use the keyword, you need to enter a value from the range "a" to "b" to replace the expression in parenthesis <>
[keyword < variable (a - b) unit >]	The parameter assignment is optional. If you use the keyword, you need to enter a value from the range "a" to "b" to replace the expression in parenthesis <>. "Unit" is one of the variables and is also replaced by the entry.
[keyword { A | B | C }]	The parameter assignment is optional. If you use the keyword, you need to specify exactly one of the values "A", "B" or "C"
keyword { [A] [B] [C] }	After the keyword, enter one or more of the values "A", "B" or "C"

2.10 Addresses and interface names

2.10.1 Naming interfaces

Addressing interfaces

The devices have several types of interface that are addressed in different ways.

Addressing physical interfaces

The following notation applies to all commands that address a physical interface:

- Enter the command "`interface`".
- Specify the interface type `<interface-type>`.
- After a space, enter the interface identifier, `<interface-id>`.
  The interface identifier is made up of the module number and the port number separated by a slash.

You call a Fast Ethernet interface on the second port of module 0 with the following command: `interface fa 0/2`

Addressing logical interfaces

The following notation applies to all commands that address a logical interface:

- Enter the command "`interface`".
- Enter the keyword for the logical interface.
  - `port-channel` (abbreviation: `po`)
  - `vlan`
- After a space, enter the number of the interface you assigned when you created it.
  - `<port-channel-id(1-8)>`
  - `<vlan-id(1-4094)>`

You call port channels as follows: `interface po 2`

You call VLAN ports as follows: `interface vlan 1`

Available physical interfaces

Available interface types

The devices support the following interface types:

interface-type	Abbreviation/acronym	Devices
fastethernet	fa	SCALANCE XB-200 SCALANCE XC-200 SCALANCE XF-200BA SCALANCE XP-200 SCALANCE XR-300WG
gigabitethernet	gi	SCALANCE XC206-2SFP (depending on the pluggable transceivers) SCALANCE XC-200G SCALANCE XP-200 SCALANCE XR-300WG

Available interface identifiers

All physical interfaces of the devices are called module 0.

Available logical interfaces

- VLAN
  To be able to use a VLAN, create it with the `vlan` command.
- Link aggregation
  Multiple ports or connections between two devices are logically bundled together (aggregated) to achieve a higher data transmission rate and a lower failure risk.
  To add an interface to a link aggregation, use the `channel-group` command.

Identification of the interfaces in the command prompt of the Interface configuration mode

To configure the interface use the command `interface` in the global configuration mode.

Since you configure precisely one of the existing interfaces in the Interface configuration mode, the command prompt shows not only the mode but also the name of this interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

The placeholder `$$$` is replaced by the following name of the interface:

Type of interface	Command prompt
fastethernet	`cli(config-if-Fa0-$) #`
gigabitethernet	`cli(config-if-Gi0-$)#`
vlan	`cli(config-if-vlan-$)#`
port-channel	`cli(config-if-po-$)#`

The placeholders `$` or `$-$` denote the numbering of the interface.

2.10.2 Address types, address ranges and address masks

Overview

Since the various types of addresses can be represented by different notations, the notations used in the Command Line Interface are shown below:

- IPv4 addresses
  Addresses for the Internet Protocol version 4 are written in the decimal notation of four numbers from the range 0 to 255, separated by a period.

  Note

  With leading zeros, the numbers are interpreted as octal numbers, e.g.: 192.168.070.071 → 192.168.56.57.

- Network masks
  A network mask is a series of bits that describes the network part of an IP address.
  The notation is normally decimal in keeping with the IP address.
- Alternative notation for network masks
  In contrast to the notation described above, network masks can also be represented as a number of 1 bits. The mask of the decimal representation 255.255.0.0 is then written as /16.
  The syntax is then for example: <ipaddress> / 16
  Note that there must be a space before and after the "/".
- MAC addresses
  In the syntax of the Command Line Interface, a MAC address is represented as a sequence of 6 bytes in hexadecimal format, in each case separated by a colon.
  The syntax is then, for example aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa
- Multicast addresses
  Layer 2 multicast addresses as used on this device use the notation of MAC addresses.
  For permitted address ranges, check the rules or ask your network administrator.

General CLI commands

3

This section describes commands that you can call up in any mode.

3.1 clear screen

Description

With this command, you clear the screen.

The command prompt is displayed.

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear screen
```

Result

The screen is cleared.

The command prompt is displayed.

3.2 do

Description

With this command, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
do [command ]
```

To do this, you replace `[command ]` with the command from the Privileged EXEC mode that you want to execute.

Example

You are in the Interface configuration mode and you want to execute the `write startup-config` command from the Privileged EXEC mode.

```
cli(config-if-$$)# do write startup-config
```

Result

The command from the Privileged EXEC mode will be executed.

3.3 end

Description

With this command, you exit the configuration mode and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode.

Requirement

You are in a configuration mode.

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
end
```

Result

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

3.4 exit

Description

With this command, you close the current mode.

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
exit
```

Result

The current mode was exited. You are then at the next higher level.

If you are in Privileged EXEC Modus or in User EXEC Modus mode, you will be logged out.

3.5 Help functions and supported input

The Command Line Interface provides various functions that are helpful when making entries in the command line:

- `help`
- ?
- Command completion with the tab key
- Automatic completion of incomplete commands
- Paging in the list of most recently used commands
- Display of the list of most recently used commands (`show history`)

3.5.1 help

Description

With this command, you display the help entry for a command or the command list.

Syntax

Call up help with the following parameters:

```
help [command]
```

Here, you replace `[command]` with the command for which you require help.

If the command for which you require help consists of several words, enter these words without spaces.

Result

The syntax of the command is displayed.

Syntax

If you call up help without parameters, you will obtain a list of all permitted commands in the current mode:

```
help
```

Result

The mode-specific as well as the global commands are displayed.

Note

Incomplete command names

If you have specified an incomplete command when calling help, a list of all commands that start with the term you have entered is created.

3.5.2 The command "?"

Description

With this command, you call up the command list.

Syntax

Enter a question mark to obtain a list of all permitted commands in the current mode:

`?`

For this command, you do not need to press the enter key. The command executes immediately after you type the character.

Result

The mode-specific as well as the global commands are displayed.

Note

Incomplete command name

If you have specified an incomplete command when calling the help function, a list of all commands that start with the term you have entered is created.

Note

Output in pages

With long lists, the results are displayed as pages. If `-- more --` appears at the lower edge of the display, you can move to the next page with the spacebar. If the display is in pages, you cannot page back. You exit the page display with the `q` key.

3.5.3 Completion of command entries

Description

The command interpreter of the Command Line Interface supports you when you enter commands.

As soon as the first characters of the command have been entered in the input line, the system can complete the entry as long as the character string is unambiguous.

This can be repeated after entering further characters.

Procedure

Enter the first characters of the command.

Press the tab key.

Result

The command interpreter completes the input as long as the command is unambiguous.

If you enter a character string that cannot be completed to form a command, an error message is displayed.

- The command is not unique: `% Ambiguous Command`
- The command is unknown: `% Invalid Command`
- The command is incomplete: `% Incomplete command`

If the entry is not yet complete, enter further characters.

With `?`, you obtain a list of the possible commands.

Repeat this if necessary until the command is complete and can execute.

3.5.4 Abbreviated notation of commands

Description

The command interpreter of the Command Line Interface also detects commands if only the first character of the command or its parts is entered.

This is only possible if all the parts of the abbreviated input can be assigned to exactly one command or to the parts of the command.

Example

The `show event config` command can be replaced by the expression `sh e c`.

3.5.5 Reusing the last used commands

Description

The Command Line Interface saves the last 14 commands used in a list assigned to the particular mode. This can then only be called up in the relevant mode.

Example:
In the Global Configuration mode, all entered commands are saved. If you entered commands earlier in the Interface Configuration mode, these commands are not included in the list of the Global Configuration mode. You can only call up and reuse these commands in the Interface Configuration mode.

Procedure

You can page through the list of the commands most recently used using the arrow up and arrow down keys.

If the command you are looking for is displayed, you can edit the command line as required and execute the command with the enter key.

Further notes

You display the list of commands last used with the `show history` command. This function is available in every mode.

3.5.6 Working through a command sequence

Separators for multiple commands in one line

You can call up several commands one after the other in one line in the CLI.

Separate the commands with a semicolon (;).

After completing your input, start the processing of this command sequence with the enter key.

Example

The command sequence

```
CLI#conf t; int vlan 1; no ip address dhcp; ip address 192.168.1.1
255.255.255.0; end; write startup
```

has the same effect as:

```
CLI#conf t
CLI(config)#int vlan 1
CLI(config-if-vlan-1)#no ip address dhcp
CLI(config-if-vlan-1)#ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
CLI(config-if-vlan-1)#end
CLI#write startup
```

3.5.7 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

3.5.7.1 show history

Description

This command shows the last 14 commands you entered.

The commands are listed in the order in which they were called up. The `show history` command is listed as the last command to be entered.

The list depends on the mode. In the Global configuration mode, the last 14 commands entered in this mode are displayed. These commands are not included in the list of the Interface configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show history
```

Result

The list of used commands is displayed.

3.5.8 clear history

Description

This command deletes the last commands you entered.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear history
```

Result

The last commands to be input are deleted.

Further notes

You display a list of the last 14 commands entered with the `show history` command.

Configuration

4

The following is described in this section:

- System settings
- Saving and loading configurations and firmware
- Restart of the device and restoring the factory defaults
- Saving and restoring configuration backups

4.1 System

This section describes commands with which general system properties can be displayed and configured.

4.1.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.1.1.1 show cli-console-timeout

Description

This command shows the timeout setting of the CLI session.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show cli-console-timeout
```

Result

The timeout setting of the CLI session is displayed.

4.1.1.2 show coordinates

Description

This command shows the geographical coordinates.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show coordinates
```

Result

The geographical coordinates are displayed.

4.1.1.3 show device information

Description

This command shows information about the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show device information
```

Result

The information about the device is displayed.

4.1.1.4 show environmental temperature

Description

This command shows the temperature values of internal and external modules of the device. The modules are only shown if they make temperature information available.

If the temperature value falls below or exceeds the displayed threshold values, the status changes accordingly. With the `event config` command, you can configure that you are informed of the status change by a message.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show environmental temperature
```

Result

The temperature values are displayed.

4.1.1.5 show ethernetip

Description

This command shows the current EtherNet/IP configuration.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ethernetip
```

Result

The current EtherNet/IP configuration is displayed.

4.1.1.6 show hardware

Description

This command shows the type and number as well as the position of the installed interface cards of the system.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show hardware
```

Result

The table of interface cards is displayed.

The slot ID, the status and the type or name of the card is listed.

Note

With SCALANCE XB-200, SCALANCE XC-200, SCALANCE XP-200 and SCALANCE XR-300WG the slot ID is always 0. The table therefore always shows precisely one row.

4.1.1.7 show im

Description

This command shows information on device-specific vendor and maintenance data such as the article number, serial number, version numbers etc.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show im
```

Result

The information is displayed.

4.1.1.8 show interfaces

Description

This command shows the status and the configuration of one, several or all interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show interfaces
   [{
     [<interface-type><interface-id>]
     [{description|storm-control|flowcontrol|status}]
    |
     {vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>}
    |
     port-channel<port-channel-id(1-8)>}
    |
     private-vlan mapping
    ]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`description`	Shows the description of the interface	-
`storm-control`	Shows the storm control settings	-
`flowcontrol`	Shows the flow control settings	-
`status`	Shows the status of the interface.	-
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel connection	-
`port-channel-id`	Number of the addressed port channel	1 … 8
`private-vlan mapping`	Shows from which secondary PVLANs the IP interface of the primary PVLAN is reachable.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the status and configuration of all available interfaces will be displayed.

Result

The status and the configuration of the selected interfaces are displayed.

4.1.1.9 show interfaces ... counters

Description

This command shows the counters of one, several or all interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show interfaces [{ <interface-type> <interface-id> | vlan <vlan-
id(1-4094)> }] counters
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available counters.

Result

The counters of the selected interfaces are displayed.

Further notes

The counters are reset on restart or with the `clear counters` command.

4.1.1.10 show ip interface

show ip interface

Description

This command shows the configuration of one, several or all IP interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip interface [{vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)> | <interface-type>
<interface-id> }]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the configuration is displayed for all available IP interfaces.

Result

The configuration of the selected IP interface is displayed.

4.1.1.11 show pnio

Description

This command shows the current PROFINET configuration.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

This`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show pnio
```

Result

The current PROFINET configuration is displayed.

4.1.1.12 show lldp neighbors

Description

This command shows the current content of the neighborhood table.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show lldp neighbors [{brief | detail}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Value range / note
`brief`	The following parameters are displayed in tabular form: • System Name • Device ID • interface	-
`detail`	The information is displayed in list form.	-

Result

The neighborhood table is displayed.

4.1.1.13 show lldp status

Description

This command shows per port whether LLDP frames are sent or received.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
show lldp status [port {<interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`port`	Keyword for a port description.	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of interfaces and addresses, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The information is displayed.

4.1.1.14 show broadcast-block config

Description

This command shows the broadcast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show broadcast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
port	Keyword for a port description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The broadcast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

4.1.1.15 show unicast-block config

Description

This command shows the unicast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show unicast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
port	Keyword for a port description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of interfaces and addresses, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The unicast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

4.1.1.16 show multicast-block config

Description

This command shows the multicast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show multicast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a port description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If no parameters are specified, the settings for all ports are displayed.

Result

The multicast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

4.1.1.17 show noa config

Description

This command shows the NOA configuration of the ports or the specified port.

Requirement

You are in User EXEC mode or in Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show noa config [port <interface-type> <interface-id>]
```

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`port`	Keyword for an interface.	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

Result

The NOA configuration of the ports or of the specified port is displayed.

4.1.1.18 show versions

Description

This command shows the version information of the entire system.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show versions
```

Result

The version information of the entire system is displayed.

4.1.2 clear counters

Description

With this command, you reset the counters of an interface.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
clear counters [ <interface-type> <interface-id> ]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If no parameters are specified, the counters for all interfaces are reset.

Result

The counters of the interface are reset.

Further notes

You can display the statistical information of the interfaces with the `show interfaces ... counters` command.

4.1.3 clear line vty

Description

With this command, you close a console session on the device.

With the `forceful-clear` option, you close a session and that is not reacting.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
clear line vty {<line-number(2-9)> | all} [forceful-clear]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`line-number`	Number of the connection that will be terminated	2 ... 9
`all`	terminates all connections	-
`forceful-clear`	closes a session that is not reacting	-

Result

The console session is closed.

Further notes

You show the logged-on users with the `show users` command.

4.1.4 configure terminal

Description

With this command, you change to the Global configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
configure terminal
```

Result

You are now in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Further notes

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` command.

4.1.5 disable

With the commands `enable` and `disable` you temporarily change the function rights of the logged in user, the login data remains unchanged.

Description

With this command, you close the Privileged EXEC mode.

You are then in the User EXEC mode.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
disable
```

Result

You are in the User EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli>
```

4.1.6 enable

With the commands `enable` and `disable` you temporarily change the function rights of the logged in user, the login data remains unchanged.

Description

With this command, you change to the Privileged EXEC mode.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli>
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
enable
```

Result

You are prompted to enter a password. Enter the password of the factory-set user "admin". The password is changed on the first login and the name can also be changed.

After logging in successfully, you are in the Privileged EXEC mode. The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

4.1.7 logout

Description

With this command, you exit the Command Line Interface.

If you are connected to the device via telnet, the session is closed.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
logout
```

Result

The CLI session is ended and the Windows Login prompt is displayed.

4.1.8 ping

Description

With this command, you request a response from a device in the network.

This allows you to check whether or not another node is reachable.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ping <destination-address>
     [size<byte(0-2080)>]
     [count<packet_count(1-10)>]
     [timeout<seconds(1-100)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`destination-address`	Address of the device whose availability you want to check	Enter a valid IPv4 address or a valid host name.
`size`	Keyword for the size of the packets to be transferred	-
`byte`	Keyword for the size of the packets in bytes	0 … 2080 Default: 32
`count`	Keyword for the number of packets to be requested	-
`packet_count`	Number of packets	1 … 10 Default: 3
`timeout`	Response wait time If this time expires, the request is reported as "timed out".	-
`seconds`	Time to the timeout in seconds	1 … 100 Default: 1

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default values are used.

Result

The messages relating to the response of the called node are displayed.

4.1.9 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.1.9.1 interface

Description

With this command, you change to the Interface configuration mode.

There you can edit the settings for one interface. You select the interface with the parameters of this command. If you specify a logical interface that does not exist, it will be created. The name of the selected interface is displayed in the command prompt.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
interface {vlan <vlan-id (1-4094)> | port-channel <port-channel-id
(1-8)> | <interface-type> <interface-id> }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Values
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 … 4094
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel connection	-
`port-channel-id`	Number of the addressed port channel	1 … 8
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

The placeholder `$$$` is replaced by the following name of the interface:

Type of interface	Command prompt
`port-channel`	`cli(config-if-po-$)#`
`vlan`	`cli(config-if-vlan-$)#`
`fastethernet`	`cli(config-if-Fa$-$)#`
`gigabitethernet`	`cli(config-if-Gi$-$)#`

The placeholders `$` or `$-$` denote the numbering of the interface.

The ranges of values for the logical interface VLAN and port channel can be found in the table above. You can only call up interfaces that you created with the `vlan` or `channel-group` command.

The ranges of values from the physical interfaces depend on the hardware configuration.

Additional notes

You exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command.

You delete a logical interface with the `no interface` command.

You display the status and the configuration of the interfaces with the `show interfaces` command.

See also

Features not supported (Page 35)

4.1.9.2 no interface

Description

With this command, you delete a logical interface.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no interface { vlan <vlan-id (1-4094)> | port-channel <port-channel-id(1-8)> }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 … 4094
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel connection	-
`port-channel-id`	Number of the addressed port channel	1 … 8

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The logical interface is deleted.

Further notes

You configure an interface with the `interface` command.

You display the status and the configuration of the interfaces with the `show interfaces` command.

4.1.9.3 cli-console-timeout

Description

With this command, you activate the automatic logout and you configure the timeout setting for the CLI session.

Note

No automatic logout from the CLI

If the connection is not terminated after the set time, check the "Keep alive" setting on the Telnet client.

If the interval is shorter than the configured time, the connection is kept alive although no user data is transferred. You have set, for example, 300 seconds for the automatic logoff and the "Keep alive" function is set to 120 seconds. In this case, a packet is sent every 120 seconds that keeps the connection up.

- Turn off the "Keep alive" function. (Interval time=0)
  or
- Set the interval high enough so that the underlying connection is terminated when there is inactivity.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
cli-console-timeout [<seconds(60-600)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`seconds`	Time in seconds until automatic logout after the last entry	60 … 600 Default: 300

Result

The time is configured and automatic logout is enabled.

Further notes

You disable automatic logout with the `no cli-console-timeout` command.

You display the current timeout setting with the `show cli-console-timeout` command.

4.1.9.4 no cli-console-timeout

Description

With this command, you disable the automatic logout.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no cli-console-timeout
```

Result

Automatic logout is disabled.

Further notes

You enable automatic logout with the `cli-console-timeout` command.

You display the current timeout setting with the `show cli-console-timeout` command.

4.1.9.5 coordinates height

Description

With this command, you enter the geographical height.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
coordinates height <meter>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`meter`	Geographical height	Max. 32 characters Enter the value for the geographical height over or under zero (sea level) in meters. To use spaces in the input, enter the height with quotation marks: `coordinates height "123 456"`

Result

The geographical height has been created.

Further notes

You display the coordinates with the `show coordinatea` command.

4.1.9.6 coordinates latitude

Description

With this command, you enter the latitude.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
coordinates latitude <latitude>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`latitude`	Latitude	Max. 32 characters Enter the value for north or south latitude. To use spaces in the entry, enter the latitude in quotes: `coordinates latitude "123 456"`

Result

The latitude has been created.

Further notes

You display the coordinates with the `show coordinatea` command.

4.1.9.7 coordinates longitude

Description

With this command, you enter the longitude.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
coordinates longitude <longitude>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`longitude`	Longitude	Max. 32 characters Enter the value for east or west longitude. To use spaces in the entry, enter the longitude in quotes: `coordinates longitude "123 456"`

Result

The longitude has been created.

Further notes

You display the coordinates with the `show coordinatea` command.

4.1.9.8 ethernetip

Description

With this command, you set whether EtherNet/IP will be enabled or disabled after the next device restart.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ethernetip {off|on}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`off`	EtherNet/IP will be disabled after the next restart.	-
`on`	EtherNet/IP will be enabled after the next restart.	• When EtherNet/IP is turned on, PROFINET is turned off. The switchover from EtherNet/IP and PROFINET has no effect on DCP. • If a PROFINET connection is established; in other words the PROFINET AR status is "Online", you cannot enable EtherNet/IP.

Result

EtherNet/IP is enabled or disabled after the next restart.

Further notes

You can display the current EtherNet/IP configuration with the `show ethernetip` command.

You restore the default settings of the EtherNet/IP profile with the `restart` command.

4.1.9.9 pnio

Description

With this command, you configure the setting for PROFINET after the next restart of the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
pnio {off|on}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`off`	PROFINET is disabled.	If a PROFINET connection is established; in other words the PROFINET AR status is "On-line", you cannot disable PROFINET.
`on`	PROFINET is activated.	When PROFINET is turned on, EtherNet/IP is turned off. The switchover from PROFINET and EtherNet/IP has no effect on DCP.

Result

PROFINET is enabled or disabled after the next restart.

Further notes

You display the current PROFINET configuration with the `show pnio` command.

You restore the default settings of the PROFINET profile with the `restart` command.

4.1.9.10 system contact

Description

With this command, you enter contact information for the system.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
system contact <contact info>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`contact info`	Input box for contact information	max. 255 characters

Result

The contact information is created in the system.

Further notes

You display the general device information with the `show device information` command.

4.1.9.11 system location

Description

With this command, you enter the location information for the system.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
system location <location name>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`location name`	Input box for the location information	max. 255 characters

Result

The location information is created in the system.

Further notes

You display the general device information with the `show device information` command.

4.1.9.12 system name

Description

This command, you enter a name for the system.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
system name <system name>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`system name`	Input box for the name	max. 255 characters

Result

The name is created in the system.

The corresponding system name is displayed instead of "`cli`" in the command prompt:
`system name``(config)#`

Further notes

You display the general device information with the `show device information` command.

4.1.9.13 username

Note

User "user" preset in the factory

As of firmware version 2.1, the default user set in the factory "user" is no longer available when the product ships.

If you update a device to firmware V2.1, the user "user" is initially still available. If you reset the device to the factory settings ("Restore Factory Defaults and Restart"), the user "user" is deleted.

You can create users with the role "user".

Description

With this command, you change the password for users with the user name "`user`" or "`admin`".

Requirement

- The user is logged in with the "admin" role.
- You are in global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
username {user|admin} password <passwd>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`user`	User with the "`user`" user name.	If you have created a user with the user name "`user`", you can change the password for this user with this command.
`admin`	User with the "`admin`" user name.	If you have not renamed the "`admin`" user preset in the factory, you can change the password for this user with this command.

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`password`	Keyword for a password	-
`passwd`	Value for the password	Enter the password. The password must meet the following conditions: • It must be unique. • The following characters must not be included: | § ? " ; : • It must not include Extended ASCII Codes (characters > 0x7F). • When the password contains spaces, the entire character string must be set in quotation marks. The strength of the password depends on the set password policy: • `low`: Password length: at least 6 characters • `high`: The password must meet the following conditions: – Password length: at least 8 characters – at least 1 uppercase letter – at least 1 special character – at least 1 number

Result

The password is changed.

Note

Changing the password in Trial mode

Even if you change the password in Trial mode, this change is saved immediately.

Further notes

You show the created users with the `show user-accounts` command.

You can also change the passwords with the `user-account` command.

You display the currently valid password policy with the `show password-policy` command.

4.1.10 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.1.10.1 alias

Description

With this command, you assign a name to an interface. The name only provides information and has no effect on the configuration.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
alias <interface-name>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-name`	Name of the interface	max. 63 characters

Result

The interface was assigned a name.

Further notes

You delete the name of the interface with the `no alias` command.

4.1.10.2 no alias

Description

With this command, you delete the name of the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no alias
```

Result

The name of the interface is removed.

Further notes

You configure the name of the interface with the `alias` command.

4.1.10.3 broadcast-block

Description

With this command, you enable the blocking of broadcast frames on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
broadcast-block
```

Result

Broadcast frames are blocked.

Further notes

You disable the blocking of broadcast frames with the `no broadcast-block` command.

4.1.10.4 no broadcast-block

Description

With this command, you disable the blocking of broadcast frames on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no broadcast-block
```

Result

The blocking of broadcast frames is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the blocking of broadcast frames with the `broadcast-block` command.

4.1.10.5 duplex

Description

Electrical interfaces can be operated in full duplex mode or half duplex mode. The options here depend on the connected device.

Optical connections are always operated in full duplex mode since they have a fiber for each transmission direction.

With this command, you configure the duplex mode of an interface. The same mode must be set for connected interfaces.

Requirement

- Autonegotiation is disabled.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode of an electrical interface.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`duplex {full|half}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`full`	The Interface will be operated in full duplex mode.	Default: `full`
`half`	The Interface will be operated in half duplex mode	-

Result

The duplex mode of the interface is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the duplex mode of the Interface to the default value with the `no duplex` command.

You disable autonegotiation with the `no negotiation` command.

4.1.10.6 no duplex

Description

With this command, you reset the duplex mode of an interface to the default value.

The default value is `full`.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no duplex
```

Result

The duplex mode of the Interface is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the duplex mode of the interface with the `duplex` command.

4.1.10.7 lldp

Description

With this command, you enable the sending and receipt of LLDP packets on the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
lldp{transmit|receive}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`transmit`	The sending of LLDP packets is enabled.	Default: enabled
`receive`	The receipt of LLDP packets is enabled.	Default: enabled

Note

Enabling both options

When you call this command, you can only select one option.

If you want to enable both options, call up the command again.

Result

Sending or receipt of LLDP packets is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the sending or receipt of LLDP packets with the `no lldp` command.

4.1.10.8 no lldp

Description

With this command, you disable the sending or receipt of LLDP packets on the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no lldp{transmit|receive}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`transmit`	the sending of LLDP packets is disabled
`receive`	the receipt of LLDP packets is disabled

Note

Disabling both options

When you call this command, you can only select one option.

If you want to disable both options, call up the command again.

Result

Sending or receipt of LLDP packets is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the sending or receipt of LLDP packets with the `lldp` command.

4.1.10.9 media type

Description

With this command, you configure the mode of a combo port.

Note

This command only influences combo ports.

If you attempt to configure a different port with this command, an error message will be displayed.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
media-type {auto|rj45|sfp}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`auto`	The `auto` mode is enabled for the combo port. In this mode, the SFP transceiver port has priority. As soon as a pluggable transceiver is plugged in, an existing connection at the fixed RJ-45 port is terminated. If no pluggable transceiver is plugged in, a connection can be established via the built-in RJ-45 port.	Default: `auto`
`rj45`	The `rj45` mode is enabled for the combo port. In this mode, the fixed RJ-45 port is used independent of the SFP transceiver port. If a pluggable transceiver is plugged in, it is disabled and the power turned off.	-
`sfp`	The `sfp` mode is enabled for the combo port. In this mode, the SFP transceiver port is used independent of the fixed RJ-45 port. If an RJ-45 connection is established, it is terminated because the power of the RJ-45 port is turned off.	-

Result

The mode of the combo port is configured.

Further notes

You display the mode of a combo port with the command `show interface` and the parameter `status`.

4.1.10.10 multicast-block

Description

With this command, you enable the blocking of multicast frames on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
multicast-block
```

Result

Multicast frames are blocked.

Further notes

You disable the blocking of multicast frames with the `no multicast-block` command.

4.1.10.11 no multicast-block

Description

With this command, you disable the blocking of multicast frames on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no multicast-block
```

Result

The blocking of multicast frames is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the blocking of multicast frames with the `mulitcast-block` command.

4.1.10.12 noa port config

Description

NOA (NAMUR Open Architecture) is a concept for data exchange in the process industry with the purpose of transferring data from the field level to a cloud. A SCALANCE XC-200 can take on the function of a NOA IT/OT switch and separate pure IT networks from pure OT networks. Communication to both networks is also possible. The switch separates the networks based on ports, i.e. a port either belongs to the IT network or to the OT network or to both networks. You use the command `noa port config` to determine which network the port belongs to.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
noa port config {otPort | itPort | itotPort}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`otPort`	The port belongs to the OT network.	-
`itPort`	The port belongs to the IT network.	-
`itotPort`	The port belongs to the OT network and the IT network.	Default

Result

The NOA functionality of the port is configured.

Additional notes

It shows the NOA configuration of the ports with the `show noa config` command.

4.1.10.13 negotiation

Description

With this command, you enable autonegotiation of connection parameters on an interface.

Autonegotiation must be set for every interface of connected interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
negotiation
```

Result

The automatic negotiation of connection parameters on an interface is activated.

Further notes

You disable the autonegotiation of connection parameters with the `no negotiation` command.

4.1.10.14 no negotiation

Description

With this command, you disable autonegotiation of connection parameters on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no negotiation
```

Result

The automatic negotiation of connection parameters on an interface is deactivated.

Further notes

You enable the autonegotiation of connection parameters with the `negotiation` command.

4.1.10.15 shutdown

Description

With this command, you shut down the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
shutdown [complete]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
without parameters	The interface is disabled but the connection remains.	-
`complete`	The interface is disabled and the connection to the partner device is terminated.	For every optical port that you disable with the `shutdown complete` command, the current consumtion of the device is reduced by 30 mA.

Result

The Interface is shut down.

If you execute this command without parameters, a connection remains displayed. The LED for the port status flashes. However no data is sent or received.

Further notes

You activate the interface with the `no shutdown` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show interfaces`command.

4.1.10.16 no shutdown

Description

With this command, you shut down an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no shutdown
```

Result

The Interface is activated.

Further notes

You deactivate the interface with the `shutdown` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show interfaces`command.

4.1.10.17 power

Description

With this command, you enable or disable the interface.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
power {down | up}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`down`	The interface is switched off.	-
`up`	The interface is switched on.	-

Result

The Interface is switched off or switched on.

Additional notes

You can display information about the status of the interfaces with the `show interfaces status` command.

4.1.10.18 speed

Description

With this command, you configure the transmission speed of an interface.

The transmission speed can only be configured for electrical data transfer. On optical connections, the transmission speed is fixed.

Requirement

- Autonegotiation is disabled.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode of an electrical interface.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
speed {10 | 100 | 1000 | 10000}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
10	Transmission speed 10 Mbps
100	Transmission speed 100 Mbps
1000	Transmission speed 1000 Mbps
10000	Transmission speed 10000 Mbps

Result

The transmission speed of the interface is configured.

Additional notes

You disable autonegotiation with the `no negotiation` command.

4.1.10.19 unicast-block

Description

With this command, you enable the blocking of unknown unicast frames on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
unicast-block
```

Result

Unicast frames are blocked.

Further notes

You disable the blocking of unicast frames with the `no unicast-block` command.

You display the status of this function with `show unicast-block config`.

4.1.10.20 no unicast-block

Description

With this command, you disable the blocking of unknown unicast frames on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no unicast-block
```

Result

The blocking of unicast frames is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the blocking of unicast frames with the `unicast-block` command.

You display the status of this function with `show unicast-block config`.

4.1.10.21 unicast-mac flush

Description

With the command, you configure which addresses are deleted from the FDB (Forward Database) when a link-down occurs on a port.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
unicast-mac flush {disabled | port | full}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`disabled`	In the event of a link-down for a port, the FDB remains unchanged.	-
`port`	In the event of a link-down for a port, only the FDB entries belonging to the corresponding port are deleted.	-
`full`	In the event of a link-down for a port, all entries in the FDB are deleted.	Default

Result

In the event of a link-down for a port, the FDB is changed according to the configuration carried out.

4.2 Load and Save

This section describes commands for displaying, copying, saving and downloading files for the device.

Note

Note that during the installation of a previous version, the configuration data can be lost. In this case, the device starts up with the factory configuration settings after the firmware has been installed.

4.2.1 File list

Overview of the file types

File type	Description
Config	This file contains the start configuration. Among other things, this device contains the definitions of the users. The passwords are stored the file "Users".
ConfigPack	Detailed configuration information. for example, start configuration, users, certificates and WBM favorites.
Debug	This file contains information for Siemens Support. It is encrypted and can be sent by e-mail to Siemens Support without any security risk.
DebugExt	This file contains detailed information for Siemens Support. It is encrypted and can be sent by e-mail to Siemens Support without any security risk. Saving the file may take some time.
EDS	Electronic Data Sheet (EDS) Electronic data sheet for describing devices in the EtherNet/IP mode
Firmware	The firmware is signed and encrypted. This ensures that only firmware created by Siemens can be downloaded to the device.
GSDML	PROFINET information on the device properties
HTTPSCert	Default HTTPS certificates including key The preset and automatically created HTTPS certificates are self-signed. We strongly recommend that you create your own HTTPS certificates and make them available. We recommend that you use HTTPS certificates signed either by a reliable external or by an internal certification authority. The HTTPS certificate checks the identity of the device and controls the encrypted data exchange. Certificates with a different format cannot be copied in.
LogFile	File with entries from the event log table
LoginWelcomeMessage	File with a text for the login page. The content of the file can consist only of a maximum of 50 lines with a maximum of 255 ASCII characters.
MIB	Private MSPS MIB file

File type	Description
RunningCLI	Text file with CLI commands This file contains an overview of the current configuration in the form of CLI commands. You can download the text file. The file is not intended to be uploaded again unchanged.
RunningSINEMA-Config	You save the current device configuration in this file type for transfer to STEP 7 Basic/Professional. The file can be imported in STEP 7 Basic/Professional and installed on a device with the same article number and firmware version. Before you can save a file, you must assign a password for the "RunningSINEMAConfig" in the WBM under "System > Load&Save > Passwords". You also need this password to import the file into STEP 7 Basic/Professional. See also "SINEMAConfig"
Script	Text file with CLI commands You can upload a script file into a device. The CLI commands it contains are executed appropriately.
SINEMAConfig	You load configuration data that was exported via STEP 7 Basic/Professional for transfer to the WBM with this file type. To load a file, you must assign a password for the "SINEMAConfig" under "System > Load&Save > Passwords". You also need this password to export the file from STEP 7 Basic/Professional. See also "RunningSINEMAConfig"
StartupInfo	Startup log file This file contains the messages that were entered in the log during the last startup.
Users	This file contains the assignment of the user names to the corresponding passwords.
WBMFav	WBM favorites This file contains the favorites that you created in the WBM. You can download this file and upload it to other devices.

4.2.2 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.2.2.1 show loadsave files

Description

This command shows the current Load&Save file information.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show loadsave files
```

Result

The current Load&Save file information is displayed.

4.2.2.2 show loadsave tftp

Description

This command shows the current configuration of the TFTP server for Load&Save.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show loadsave tftp
```

Result

The current configuration of the TFTP server for Load&Save is displayed.

4.2.3 load tftp

Firmware

The firmware is signed and encrypted. This ensures that only firmware created by Siemens can be downloaded to the device.

Description

With this command, you load the files from a TFTP server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
load tftp ipv4 <ipv4-address> [port <tcp port (1-65535)>] file
<filename> filetype <filetype>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
`ipv4-address`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`port`	Keyword for the port of the server via which the TFTP connection runs	-
`tcp port`	Number of the port	1 … 65535 Default: 69
`file`	Keyword for a file name to be assigned	-
`filename`	Name of the file	max. 100 characters
`filetype`	Keyword for the file type to be loaded	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The file is loaded on the device from the TFTP server.

Further notes

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

4.2.4 save filetype

Description

With this command, you save files on a TFTP server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
save filetype <filetype> tftp ipv4 <ipv4-address> [port <tcp port
(1-65535)>] file <filename>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`filetype`	Keyword for a file type to be loaded	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters
`tftp`	Keyword for a TFTP server	-
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
`ipv4-address`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`port`	Keyword for the port of the server via which the TFTP connection runs	-
`tcp port`	Number of the port	1 … 65535 Default: 69
`file`	Keyword for a file name to be assigned	-
`filename`	Name of the file	max. 100 characters

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The file is saved on the TFTP server.

Further notes

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

4.2.5 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.2.5.1 loadsave

Description

With this command, you change to the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
loadsave
```

Result

You are now in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-loadsave)#
```

Further notes

You exit the LOADSAVE configuration mode with the `exit` command.

4.2.6 Commands in the LOADSAVE configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `loadsave` command to change to this mode.

You display the valid file types for the commands in the LOADSAVE Configuration mode with the global command `show loadsave tftp`.

- If you exit the LOADSAVE configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global Configuration mode.
- If you exit the LOADSAVE configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in LOADSAVE configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

For information on the file types , refer to this list (Page 109).

4.2.6.1 delete

Description

With this command, you call up the possible files or delete a specific file.

Requirement

You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-loadsave)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
delete { showfiles | filetype <filetype> }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`showfiles`	Shows the available files	-
`filetype`	Keyword for the file type to be deleted	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters

Result

The files are displayed or the file is deleted.

Further notes

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

4.2.6.2 password

Description

With this command, you activate and configure the password for a file.

Requirement

You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-loadsave)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
password { showfiles | filetype <filetype> [pw <password>] }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Values
`showfiles`	Shows the available files. The status is displayed in addition for the HTTPSCert file type. The available options are as follows: • Invalid The password does not match the certificate. The default certificate is used after a restart. • Valid The password matches the certificate. The downloaded certificate is used after a restart. • - No password was assigned. The default certificate is used after a restart.	-
`filetype`	Keyword for the file type.	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters
`pw`	Keyword for the password	-
`password`	Password	Enter the password for the file.

Result

The password for the file is configured and activated.

Additional notes

You disable the password with the `no password` command.

4.2.6.3 no password

Description

With this command, you disable the password for a file.

Requirement

You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-loadsave)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no password { showfiles | filetype <filetype>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Values
`showfiles`	Shows the available files	-
`filetype`	Shows that the file type follows that will be loaded	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters

Result

The password for the file is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the password for the user certificate with the `password` command.

4.2.6.4 tftp filename

Description

With this command, you assign a name to a file type.

The file type decides the type that is affected by the `tftp load` or `tftp save` action. The name decides the file to be copied to or from the TFTP server.

Requirement

You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-loadsave)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
tftp filename {showfiles | filetype <filetype> name <filename>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`showfiles`	Shows the available files	-
`filetype`	Keyword for a file type to be assigned a name	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters
`name`	Keyword for a file name to be assigned to the file type	-
`filename`	Name of the file	max. 100 characters

Result

The file types are displayed or the file type is assigned a name.

Further notes

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

4.2.6.5 tftp load

Firmware

The firmware is signed and encrypted. This ensures that only firmware created by Siemens can be downloaded to the device.

Description

With this command, you load a file from a TFTP server into the file system of the device. The TFTP protocol is used for the transfer. You can also display a list of available files.

Requirement

- The name of the file is specified
- You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-loadsave)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
tftp load { showfiles | filetype <filetype> }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`showfiles`	Shows the available files	-
`filetype`	Keyword for a file type to be loaded	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters

Result

The file types are displayed or the file is downloaded to the device.

Further notes

You configure the name of the file with the `tftp filename` command.

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

4.2.6.6 tftp save

Description

With this command, you copy a file from the file system of the device to a TFTP server. The TFTP protocol is used for the transfer. You can also display a list of available files.

Requirement

- The name of the file is specified
- You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-loadsave)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
tftp save { showfiles | filetype <filetype> }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`showfiles`	Shows the available files	-
`filetype`	Keyword for a file type to be loaded	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters

Result

The file types are displayed or the file is copied.

Further notes

You configure the name of the file with the `tftp filename` command.

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

4.2.6.7 tftp server

Description

With this command, you configure the access to a TFTP server.

Requirement

You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-loadsave)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
tftp server ipv4 <ipv4-address> [port <tcp port (1-65535)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
`ipv4-address`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`port`	Keyword for the port of the server via which the TFTP connection runs	-
`tcp port`	Number of the port	1 … 65535

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The settings for the access to the selected TFTP server are configured.

4.2.6.8 sftp filename

Description

With this command, you assign a name to a file type.

The file type decides the type that is affected by the `sftp load` or `sftp save` action. The name decides the file to be copied to or from the SFTP server.

Requirement

You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-loadsave)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
sftp filename {showfiles | filetype <filetype> name <filename>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`showfiles`	Shows the available files	-
`filetype`	Keyword for a file type to be assigned a name	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters
`name`	Keyword for a file name to be assigned to the file type	-
`filename`	Name of the file	max. 100 characters

Result

The file types are displayed or the file type is assigned a name.

Further notes

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

4.2.6.9 sftp load

Description

With this command, you load a file from an SFTP server into the file system of the device. You can also display a list of available files.

Requirement

- The name of the file is specified
- You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-loadsave)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
sftp load { showfiles | filetype <filetype> }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`showfiles`	Shows the available files	-
`filetype`	Keyword for a file type to be loaded	-
`filetype`	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters

Result

The file types are displayed or the file is downloaded to the device.

Further notes

You configure the name of the file with the `sftp filename` command.

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

4.2.6.10 sftp save

Description

With this command, you copy a file from the file system of the device to an SFTP server. The SFTP protocol is used for the transfer. You can also display a list of available files.

Requirement

- The name of the file is specified
- You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-loadsave)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
sftp save { showfiles | filetype <filetype> }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
showfiles	Shows the available files	-
filetype	Keyword for a file type to be loaded	-
filetype	Name of the file type	max. 100 characters

Result

The file types are displayed or the file is copied.

Further notes

You configure the name of the file with the `sftp filename` command.

With the "`show loadsave files`" command, you can display the file types.

4.2.6.11 sftp server

Description

With this command, you configure the access to an SFTP server.

Requirement

You are in the LOADSAVE configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-loadsave)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
 sftp server ipv4 <ucast_addr> [port <tcp port (1-65535)>] [user
<username>] [password <password>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
ipv4	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
ucast_addr	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
port	Keyword for the port of the server via which the SFTP connection runs	-
tcp port	Number of the port	1 … 65535
user	Keyword for user	-

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
username	User name for access to the SFTP server	Enter a valid user name. This parameter can only be used when a user with the corresponding rights has been created on the SFTP server.
password	Keyword for a password	-
password	Password of the user	Enter the password for the user.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The settings for the access to the selected SFTP server are configured.

4.3 Reset and Defaults

This section describes commands for restarting the device and for restoring the original configuration.

4.3.1 restart

Description

With this command, you restart the device.

Select one of the following configuration settings:

- Device restart with the current configuration
- Device restart with the factory configuration settings.
- Device restart with the default settings of the PROFINET IO profile.
- Device restart with the default settings of the EtherNet/IP profile.
- Device restart with the default settings of the Industrial Ethernet profile.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
restart [{factory | pnio | ethernetip | ie}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
without parameters	The system restarts with the current configuration	• You can only restart the device with administrator privileges. • A device should only be restarted by this CLI command or the corresponding buttons in the WBM and not by a poer cycle on the device.
`factory`	Restores the factory settings of the device and restarts the device. The factory settings depend on the device.	• By resetting all the settings to the factory settings, the IP address and the passwords are also lost. Following this, the device can only be accessed via the serial interface, using the Primary Set-up Tool or using DHCP. • • With the appropriate attachment, a previously correctly configured device can cause circulating frames and therefore the failure of the data traffic.

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`pnio`	Restores the default settings of the PROFINET IO profile and restarts the device.	• The profiles provide a preconfiguration for various use cases of the devices. • When you start a device with the default settings of a profile, the settings are reset to the factory settings and some parameters are set so that they are designed for a use case. • In contrast to resetting to the factory settings. the users and passwords are retained after the restart. The configured IP address is lost so that device can then only be accessed via the serial interface, using the Primary Setup Tool or using DHCP. • With the appropriate attachment, a previously correctly configured device can cause circulating frames and therefore the failure of the data traffic.
`ethernetip`	Restores the default settings of the EtherNet/IP profile and restarts the device.	
`ie`	Restores the default settings of the Industrial Ethernet profile and restarts the device.	

Result

The device is restarted with the selected settings.

4.3.2 Commands in global configuration mode

4.3.2.1 Introductory sentence for the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.3.2.2 schedule restart-timer

Description

With this command, you specify the time after which the device restarts.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
schedule restart-timer <seconds(300-86400)>
```

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
seconds	Value for the time in seconds	300 ... 86400 (24 h)

Result

When "Automatic Save" configuration mode is active, an additional message is displayed. You can specify whether the device should save the current configuration and switch to "Trial" mode. In any case, the device restarts after the specified time.

Additional notes

You disable the scheduled restart of the device with the `cancel restart-time` command.

4.3.2.3 cancel restart-time

Description

With this command, you disable the timer.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
cancel restart-time
```

Result

The timer for the scheduled restart is disabled.

4.4 Configuration Save & Restore

This section describes commands for displaying, saving and restoring configuration settings.

4.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.4.1.1 show running-config

Note

Depending on the device type, the IE switch does not support all described parameters; see section "Features not supported (Page 35)".

Description

This command shows configuration settings of the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show running-config [{ syslog | dhcp | qos | stp | la | dot1x |
vlan [ <vlan-id (1-4094)>] |
interface { port-channel <port-channel-id (1-8)> |
<interface-type> <interface-list> | vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)> } |
ssh | ssl | acl | ip | snmp | radius | rmon | igmp | sntp |
http | broadcast-blocking | multicast-blocking | locked-port |
auto-logout | time | ntp | auto-save | panel-button | cos-map |
dscp-map | output-rate-limit | unicast-blocking | ospf | vrrp |
```

```
loopd | events | redundancy | passive | umac | nat | fmp |
pim | msdp | router-advertisement-blocking | mac-learning |
mac-flush-type}] [all]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`syslog`	Shows the configuration settings of the Syslog function	-
`dhcp`	shows the configuration settings of the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol	-
`qos`	shows the configuration settings of QoS (Quality of Service)	-
`stp`	Shows the configuration settings of the Spanning Tree protocol	-
`la`	Shows the configuration settings of the Link Aggregation function	-
`dot1x`	shows the configuration settings of the port-based network access control	-
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel connection	-
`port-channel-id`	Number of the addressed port channel	1 … 8
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-list`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`ssh`	Shows the configuration settings of the Secure Shell protocol	-
`ssl`	Shows the configuration settings of the Secure Sockets Layer protocol	-
`acl`	Shows the configuration settings of the access control lists	-
`ip`	Shows the configuration settings of the Internet Protocol	-
`snmp`	Shows the configuration settings of the Simple Network Management Protocol	-
`radius`	shows the configuration settings of the Remote Authentication Dial-In User service	-
`rmon`	Shows the configuration settings of the Remote Monitoring function	-
`igmp`	Shows the configuration settings of the Internet Group Management Protocol	-
`sntp`	Shows the configuration settings of the Simple Network Time Protocol	-
`http`	Shows the configuration settings of the Hypertext Transfer Protocol	-

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
broadcast-blocking	Shows the configuration settings of the broadcast blocking	-
multicast-blocking	Shows the configuration settings of the multicast blocking	-
locked-port	Shows the configuration settings of the locked port function	-
auto-logout	Shows the configuration settings of the auto logout function	-
time	Shows the configuration settings of the system time	-
ntp	Shows the configuration settings of the Network Time Protocol	-
auto-save	Shows the configuration settings of the auto save function	-
panel-button	Shows the configuration settings of the Panel Button function	-
cos-map	Shows the configuration settings of the COS function	-
dscp-map	Shows the configuration settings of the DSCP map function	-
output-rate-limit	Shows the configuration settings of the output rate limit function	-
unicast-blocking	Shows the configuration settings of the unicast blocking	-
ospf	Shows the configuration settings of the Open Shortest Path First	-
vrrp	Shows the configuration settings of the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol	-
loopd	Shows the configuration settings of loop detection	-
events	Shows the configuration settings of the events	-
redundancy	Shows the configuration settings of the redundancy	-
passive	Shows the configuration settings of passive listening	-
umac	Shows the configuration settings of the user configuration	-
nat	Shows the configuration settings of the Network Address Translation	-
fmp	Shows the configuration settings of the Fiber Monitoring protocol	-
pim	Shows the configuration settings of the Independent Multicast protocol	-
msdp	Shows the configuration settings of the Multicast Source Discovery protocol	-

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`router-advertisement-blocking`	Shows the configuration settings of the router advertisement blocking.	-
`mac-learning`		-
`mac-flush-type`	Shows the configuration settings of the "`unicast-mac flush`" command	-
`all`	shows all configuration settings and all default parameters. Some parameters cannot be changed.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The selected configuration settings of the device are displayed.

Passwords are masked as follows: [PASSWORD]

In other "show" commands, passwords are masked as follows: ******

4.4.2 write startup-config

Description

With this command, you save the changes to the configuration in the configuration file.

The use of this command is required in the Trial mode. It can also be used in "auto save mode".

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`*cli#` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
write startup-config
```

Result

The changes are saved in the configuration file.

When you restart the device without parameter assignment with the `restart` command, this configuration is used.

Further notes

You enable the auto save function or disable the Trial mode with the `auto-save` command.

You disable the auto save function or enable the Trial mode with the `no auto-save` command.

4.4.3 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.4.3.1 auto-save

Description

The CLI can save changes to the configuration automatically.

If you first want to test changes made to the configuration so that you can discard them afterwards if necessary, you can disable the auto save function. You are then in the Trial mode.

Note

PROFINET IO functionality of the device is switched off when the "Auto save function" is disabled ("Trial mode"). The device then no longer responds to PROFINET requests. Consequently, a controller does not receive any PROFINET information from the device.

SINEC NMS or SINEMA Server cannot monitor the device with the PROFINET protocol when the "Auto save function" is disabled.

Changes to the configuration that you have not saved are indicated by an asterisk in front of the command prompt: `*cli(...)#`.

You save the changes to the configuration with the `write startup-config` command.

With the `auto-save` command, you enable the auto save function.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
auto-save
```

As default the function is "enabled".

Result

The auto save function is enabled.

Additional notes

You save changes to the configuration in trial mode with the `write startup-config` command.

You disable the function with the `no auto-save` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show device information` command.

4.4.3.2 no auto-save

Description

With this command, you disable the auto save function.

Note

PROFINET IO functionality of the device is switched off when the "Auto save function" is disabled ("Trial mode"). The device then no longer responds to PROFINET requests. Consequently, a controller does not receive any PROFINET information from the device.

SINEC NMS or SINEMA Server cannot monitor the device with the PROFINET protocol when the "Auto save function" is disabled.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no auto-save
```

Result

The auto save function is disabled. The Trial mode is activated.

Additional notes

You enable the function with the `auto-save` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show device information` command.

You save changes to the configuration in trial mode with the `write startup-config` command.

4.5 DCP Discovery and Set (DaS)

This section describes commands for displaying and setting network parameters.

4.5.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.5.1.1 show das info

Description

This command shows the devices that can be reached via the interface and support DCP. DCP Discovery only searches for devices located in the same subnet as the interface.

The result of the search is not saved permanently. Perform the search again after a restart.

Requirement

- The command `das discover interface` is executed.
- You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show das info [detail]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Value range / note
`detail`	The information is displayed in list form.	-

Result

The available devices and their network parameters are displayed in the tabular or list form.

Further notes

You start the search for available devices with the `das discover interface` command.

You configure the network parameters of the reachable device with the `das mac ip` command.

You delete the content of the table with the `das delete` command.

You configure the PROFINET device name of the reachable device with the `das mac name` command.

4.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.5.2.1 das discover interface

Description

With this command, you start the search for devices reachable via the selected interface. The function is only available with the VLAN associated with the TIA interface.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
das discover interface { <interface-type> <interface-id> | vlan
<vlan-id(1-4094)> | port-channel <port-channel-id (1-8)}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 … 4094
`port-channel`	Keyword for a link aggregation	-
`port-channel-id`	Number of the addressed link aggregation	1 … 8

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The reachable devices are searched for. On completion of the search the reachable devices are saved in a table. You display the table with the `show das info` command.

4.5.2.2 das mac name

Description

With this command, you configure the PROFINET device name of the selected device.

Requirement

- The command `das discover interface` is executed.
- You are in global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
das mac <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa> name <name(127)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
–	MAC address of the reachable device	`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`
`name`	PROFINET device name	Maximum of 127 characters The device name must be DNS-compliant.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The PROFINET device name of the selected device is configured.

To ensure that the property was applied correctly, run the `das discover interface` command again.

Further notes

You display the configured PROFINET device name with the `show das info` command.

4.5.2.3 das mac ip

Description

With this command, you configure the network parameters of the selected device.

Requirement

- The command `das discover interface` is executed.
- You are in global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
das mac <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa> ip <ip address> {<subnet-mask> | /
<prefix-length(1-32)>} [gateway <ip address>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
-	MAC address of the reachable device	`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`
`ip`	Keyword for IPv4 address	
`ip address`	IPv4 address of the device	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
`subnet-mask`	Subnet mask	
`prefix-length`	Decimal representation of the mask as a number of "1" bits	1 ... 32
`gateway`	Keyword for gateway	-
`ip address`	IPv4 address of the gateway	Enter a valid IPv4 address.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The network parameters of the selected device are configured.

To ensure that the property was applied correctly, run the `das discover interface` command again.

Further notes

You display the network parameters with the `show das info` command.

4.5.2.4 das mac blink

Description

With this command, you make the port LEDs of the selected device or your own device flash.

Requirement

- The command `das discover interface` is executed.
- You are in global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
das mac {<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>|own} blink [timeout <seconds(5-60)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`mac`	The port LEDs of the selected device flash.	• `aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa` Specify the desired MAC address. • `own` The port LEDs of your own device flash.
`timeout`	Keyword for the blink duration	-
`seconds`	Blink duration in seconds	5 ... 60 Default: 5 seconds

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The port LEDs of the selected device flash. When the time (`timeout`) elapses, flashing stops.

4.5.2.5 das delete

Description

With this command, you delete the content of the table in which the reachable devices are saved.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
das delete {mac <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa> | all }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`mac`	Deletes the selected device in the table.	`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`
`all`	Deletes the content of the entire table.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The selected device or the entire content of the table has been removed from the table.

4.6 PoE

4.6.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.6.1.1 show poe status

Description

This command shows specific information for all or for a selected PoE interface (PoE: Power over Ethernet).

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show poe status [interface <interface-type> <interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

If you use the command without setting parameters, information about all PoE interfaces is displayed.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The information for the selected PoE interface is displayed.

4.6.1.2 show pse status

Description

This command shows the current settings of the PoE power supply of the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show pse status [<integer>]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`integer`	Number of the PSE	-

If you do not select any parameter, the entries are displayed for all available PSEs.

Result

The current settings of the PoE power supply of the device are displayed.

4.6.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.6.2.1 poe pse usage

Description

With this command, you set a value (as a percentage) for the "Usage Threshold" parameter. This specifies how many percent of the maximum power the connected devices will use. As soon as the power being used by the end devices exceeds this percentage, an event is triggered. An event is also entered in the log. You display the entries of the log with the command `show logbook`. You will find more information on this command in the section "show logbook (Page 642)".

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
poe pse <integer(1-4)> usage <integer(1-100)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`integer`	Number of the PSE	1 … 4
`integer`	Value for "Usage Threshold" as a percentage	1 ... 100 Default: 80%

Result

The value for "Usage Threshold" is configured.

4.6.2.2 no poe pse usage

Description

With this command, you reset the "Usage Threshold" parameter to the default value.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no poe pse <integer(1-4)> usage
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`integer`	Number of the PSE	1 … 4

Result

The "Usage Threshold" parameter is reset to the default value.

4.6.3 Commands in the Interface Configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.6.3.1 poe active

Description

With this command, you activate PoE for the interface in whose interface configuration mode you are currently working.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
poe active
```

Result

PoE is activated for the corresponding interface.

4.6.3.2 no poe active

Description

With this command, you deactivate PoE for the interface in whose interface configuration mode you are currently working.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no poe active
```

Result

PoE is deactivated for the corresponding interface.

4.6.3.3 poe custom maxpwr

Description

With this command you set the maximum power that a port makes available to supply a connected device.

This value is taken into account when the function is enabled with the `poe custom maxpwr active` command.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameter:

```
poe custom maxpwr <integer(0-30)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`integer`	Value for the user-defined maximum power in watts	0 ... 30

Result

The maximum power is set.

Further notes

You enable the user-defined maximum power for the interface with the `poe custom maxpwr active` command.

You disable the user-defined maximum power for the interface with the `no poe custom maxpwr active` command.

You delete the user-defined maximum power for the interface with the `no poe custom maxpwr` command.

4.6.3.4 no poe custom maxpwr

Description

With this command, you delete the user-defined maximum power for a port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no poe custom maxpwr
```

Result

The user-defined maximum power is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the user-defined maximum power for the interface with the `poe custom maxpwr` command.

You enable the user-defined maximum power for the interface with the `poe custom maxpwr active` command.

You disable the user-defined maximum power for the interface with the `no poe custom maxpwr active` command.

4.6.3.5 poe custom maxpwr active

Description

With this command, you enable use of the user-defined maximum power for the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
poe custom maxpwr active
```

Result

The user-defined maximum power is enabled for the relevant interface.

Further notes

You configure the user-defined maximum power for an interface with the `poe custom maxpwr` command.

You disable the use of the user-defined maximum power with the `no poe custom maxpwr active` command.

4.6.3.6 no poe custom maxpwr active

Description

With this command, you disable use of the user-defined maximum power for the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no poe custom maxpwr active
```

Result

The user-defined maximum power is disabled for the relevant interface.

Further notes

You configure the user-defined maximum power for an interface with the `poe custom maxpwr` command.

You enable the use of the user-defined maximum power with the `poe custom maxpwr active` command.

4.6.3.7 poe type

Description

This command specifies a character string that describes a connected device in greater detail.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
poe type <string>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`string`	Description of a connected device	max. 255 characters

Result

The description of the connected device has been specified.

4.6.3.8 no poe type

Description

With this command, you delete the description for a connected device.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no poe type
```

Result

The description of the corresponding device is deleted.

4.6.3.9 poe prio

Description

With this command, you specify the priority of the power supply for an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
poe prio {low|high|critical}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`low`	low priority
`high`	high priority
`critical`	highest priority

If the power of the connected power supply is inadequate to supply all connected devices, devices with a higher priority are given preference.

If the same priority is set for two ports, the port with the lower number will be preferred when necessary.

Result

The priority of the corresponding interface has been specified.

4.6.3.10 no poe prio

Description

With this command, you set the priority of an interface to the default value "low".

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode of a PoE interface.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no poe prio
```

Result

The priority of the corresponding interface has been set to "low".

4.7 SINEMA

If the SINEMA configuration interface is enabled, you can download configurations to the IE switch via STEP7 Basic/Professional.

4.7.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.7.1.1 show sinema

Description

This command shows whether the SINEMA configuration interface is enabled or disabled.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show sinema
```

Result

The setting of the SINEMA configuration interface is displayed.

4.7.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

4.7.2.1 sinema

Description

With this command, you enable the SINEMA configuration interface.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
sinema
```

Result

The SINEMA configuration interface is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the SINEMA configuration interface with the `no sinema` command.

You display the setting whether the SINEMA configuration interface is enabled or disabled with the command `show sinema`.

4.7.2.2 no sinema

Description

With this command, you disable the SINEMA configuration interface.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no sinema
```

Result

The SINEMA configuration interface is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the SINEMA configuration interface with the `sinema` command.

You display the setting whether the SINEMA configuration interface is enabled or disabled with the command `show sinema`.

Functions specific to SCALANCE

5

This part contains the sections that describe functions specific to SCALANCE.

5.1 PLUG

The C-PLUG stores the configuration of a device and can therefore transfer the configuration of the old device to the new device when a device is replaced.

This section describes the commands relevant for working with the C-PLUG.

5.1.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

5.1.1.1 show plug

Description

This command shows the current information of the PLUG.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show plug
```

Result

The current information of the PLUG is diplayed.

5.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

5.1.2.1 plug

Description

With this command, you change to the Plug Configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
plug
```

Result

You are now in the Plug Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-plug)#
```

Further notes

You exit the Plug Configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command.

5.1.3 Commands in the Plug configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Plug Configuration mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `plug` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the Plug Configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global Configuration mode.
- If you exit the Plug Configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in Plug configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

5.1.3.1 factoryclean

Description

With this command, you delete the device configuration stored on the PLUG.

Requirement

- There is a device configuration on the PLUG.
- You are in the Plug Configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-plug)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
factoryclean
```

Result

The device configuration on the PLUG is deleted.

5.1.3.2 firmware-on-plug

Description

With this command, you specify that the firmware is stored on the PLUG.

Requirement

- There is a device configuration on the PLUG.
- You are in the Plug Configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-plug)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
firmware-on-plug
```

Result

The firmware is stored on the PLUG.

When the device starts up there is a check whether the version on the PLUG is valid and whether this version matches the version on the device. If this is not the case, the firmware is installed on the device and it is restarted. This means that automatic firmware updates/ downgrades can be made with the PLUG.

Further notes

You disable this setting with the `no firmware-on-plug` command.

5.1.3.3 no firmware on plug

Description

With this command, you disable the function. The firmware is removed from the PLUG.

Requirement

- There is a device configuration on the PLUG.
- You are in the Plug Configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-plug)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no firmware-on-plug
```

Result

The firmware is removed from the PLUG.

5.1.3.4 write

Description

With this command, you format the PLUG and copy the current device configuration to it.

Requirement

- The PLUG is formatted.
- You are in the Plug Configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-plug)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

`write`

Result

The current device configuration has been copied to the formatted PLUG.

5.2 WBM

On the device, you can limit the time available for access with Web Based Management. If no entry is made for a specific time, the WBM session is closed.

This section describes commands relevant for the configuration of this feature.

5.2.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

5.2.1.1 show web-session-timeout

Description

This command shows the timeout setting for the WBM.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show web-session-timeout
```

Result

The timeout setting for the WBM is displayed.

5.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

5.2.2.1 web-session-timeout

Description

With this command, you enable the automatic logoff and you configure the timeout setting for the WBM.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
web-session-timeout [<seconds(60-3600)>]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`seconds`	Time in seconds until automatic logout after the last entry	60 … 3600 Default: 900

Result

The time is configured and automatic logout is enabled.

Further notes

You disable automatic logoff with the `no web-session-timeout` command.

You display the current timeout setting with the `show web-session-timeout` command.

5.2.2.2 no web-session-timeout

Description

With this command, you disable the automatic logoff.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no web-session-timeout
```

Result

Automatic logoff is disabled.

Further notes

You enable automatic logoff with the `web-session-timeout` command.

You display the current timeout setting with the `show web-session-timeout` command.

5.3 Panel button

This section describes the commands relevant for working with the button.

You will find a detailed description of the function available using the button in the device operating instructions.

Availability of the buttons

Depending on your IE switch, different buttons and functions are available, see section "System functions hardware equipment (Page 29)".

5.3.1 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

5.3.1.1 panel-button control-factory-defaults

Description

With this command, you enable the following function of the button:

- When the button is pressed for more than 12 seconds in display mode A, there is a restart with the factory settings.
  This function corresponds to calling the `restart` command with the parameter `factory`.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
panel-button control-factory-defaults
```

Result

The function of the button for restarting with factory settings is enabled.

Further notes

You disable this function with the `no panel-button control-factory-defaults` command.

5.3.1.2 no panel-button control-factory-defaults

Description

With this command, you disable the following function of the button:

- When the button is pressed for more than 12 seconds in display mode A, there is a restart with the factory settings.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no panel-button control-factory-defaults
```

Result

The function of the button for restarting with factory settings is enabled or disabled.

Further notes

You enable this function with the `panel-button control-factory-defaults` command.

5.3.1.3 panel-button control-faultmask

Description

With this command, you enable the following function of the button:

- If display mode D "Fault Mask" is displayed and the button is pressed for 5 - 12 seconds, the fault mask is set.
  This function corresponds to calling the following commands in EVENTS Configuration Mode:
  - `power`
  - `link` with the parameter `down`

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
panel-button control-faultmask
```

Result

The function of the button for setting the fault mask is enabled.

Further notes

You disable this function with the `no panel-button control-faultmask` command.

5.3.1.4 no panel-button control-faultmask

Description

With this command, you disable the following function of the button:

- If display mode D "Fault Mask" is displayed and the button is pressed for 5 - 12 seconds, the fault mask is set.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no panel-button control-faultmask
```

Result

The function of the button for setting the fault mask is disabled.

Further notes

You enable this function with the `panel-button control-faultmask` command.

5.4 Signaling contact

This section describes the commands relevant for working with the signaling contact.

5.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

5.4.1.1 show signaling contact

Description

This command shows the current configuration of the signaling contact.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show signaling-contact
```

Result

The current configuration of the signaling contact is displayed.

5.4.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

5.4.2.1 signaling contact mode

Description

With this command, you specify the reaction of the signaling contact.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
signaling-contact mode {conventional | aligned}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`conventional`	An error/fault is displayed by the fault LED and the signaling contact is opened. When the error/fault state no longer exists, the fault LED goes off and the signaling contact is closed.
`aligned`	The way the signaling contact works does not depend on the error/fault that has occurred. The signaling contact can be opened or closed as required by user actions.

Result

The reaction of the signaling contact is specified.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show signaling contact` command.

5.4.2.2 signaling-contact status

Description

With this command, you close or open the signaling contact.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
signaling-contact status {open|close}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`open`	Signaling contact is opened.
`close`	Signaling contact is closed.

Result

The signaling contact is opened or closed.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show signaling contact` command.

System time 6

6.1 System time setting

This section describes commands relevant for the configuration of the system time.

6.1.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

6.1.1.1 show dst info

Description

This command shows all the entries for daylight saving time stored on the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show dst info
```

Result

The entries for daylight saving time are displayed.

6.1.1.2 show time

Description

This command shows the settings of the system clock.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show time
```

Result

The settings for the system clock are displayed.

6.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

6.1.2.1 time

Description

With this command, you configure the way in which the system time is obtained.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
time { manual | ntp | sntp | sinec }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`manual`	The system time is entered by the user.
`ntp`	The system time is obtained from the NTP server.
`sntp`	The system time is obtained from the SNTP server.
`sinec`	The system time is obtained using the SIMATIC Time Client .

Result

The method of obtaining the system time is configured.

Further notes

You display the settings for the system clock with the `show time` command.

You create the system time with the `time set` command.

6.1.2.2 time set

Description

With this command, you set the system time.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
time set hh:mm:ss <day (1-31)> {january|february|march|april|may|
june|july|august|september|october|november|december}
<year (2000 - 2035)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`hh:mm:ss`	Time of day	Hour, minute, second each separated by ":"
`day`	Day of the month	1 ... 31
-	Month	january, february, march, april, may, june, july, august, september, october, november, december
`year`	Year	2000 ... 2035

Result

The system time is set.

Further notes

You display the settings for the system clock with the `show time` command.

6.1.2.3 time dst date

Description

With this command, you configure the start and end of daylight saving time.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
time dst date <name(16)> <year (1900-2099)> begin <MMDDhh> end
<MMDDhh>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`name`	Name of the entry	maximum 16 characters
`year`	Year	1900 ... 2099
`begin`	Keyword for the start of daylight saving time.	-
`MMDDhh`	Time for the start of daylight saving time.	Time in the format `MM` Month `DD` Day `hh` Hour
`end`	Keyword for the end of daylight saving time.	-
`MMDDhh`	Time for the end of daylight saving time.	Time in the format `MM` Month `DD` Day `hh` Hour

Result

The entry for the start and end of daylight saving time was created.

Further notes

You display the settings for the daylight saving time changeover with the `show dst info` command.

6.1.2.4 time dst recurring

Description

With this command, you configure the start and end of daylight saving time with a generic description.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
time dst recurring <name(16)> begin {<week(1-5)> | last} <weekday>
<month> <hour> end {<week(1-5)> | last} <weekday> <month> <hour>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`name`	Name of the entry	maximum 16 characters
`begin`	Keyword for the start of daylight saving time.	-
`week`	Calendar week in a month	1 … 5
`last`	Keyword for the last calendar week in a month	-
`weekday`	Weekday	monday, tuesday, wednesday, thursday, friday, saturday, sunday
`month`	Month	january, february, march, april, may, june, july, august, september, october, november, december
`hour`	Hour	0 ... 23
`end`	Keyword for the end of daylight saving time.	-

Result

The entry for the start and end of daylight saving time was created.

Further notes

You display the settings for the daylight saving time changeover with the `show dst info` command.

6.1.2.5 no time dst

Description

With this command you delete the entry for the start and end of daylight saving time with the specified name. If you do not specify a name as the parameter, all entries are deleted.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no time dst [<name(16)>]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`name`	Name of the entry	maximum 16 characters

Result

One entry or the entries for the start and end of daylight saving time was/were deleted.

Additional notes

You display the settings for the daylight saving time changeover with the `show dst info` command.

6.2 NTP client

This section describes commands for configuration of the NTP server and the NTP client.

6.2.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

6.2.1.1 show ntp info

Description

This command shows the current settings for the Network Time Protocol (NTP).

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ntp info
```

Result

The current NTP settings are displayed.

6.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

6.2.2.1 ntp

Description

With this command, you change to the Network Time Protocol (NTP).

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ntp
```

Result

You are now in the NTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-ntp)#
```

Further notes

You exit the NTP configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command.

6.2.3 Commands in the NTP configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the NTP configuration mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `ntp` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the NTP configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the NTP configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in NTP configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

6.2.3.1 ntp server id

Description

With this command, you configure the connection to a server on the NTP client.

Requirement

You are in the NTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-ntp)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ntp server id <1-4> ipv4 <ip_addr> [port { <1025-36564> | default}]
[poll <seconds(64-1024)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`id`	Number of the NTP server.	1 ... 4 The NTP servers are queried in the order of the NTP Server Index. The time of the server that is found first is applied. If time frames of an NTP server with a smaller stratum value are received, this time is applied. The switchover to the time with the smaller stratum takes about 30 minutes.
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
`ip_addr`	Value for the IPv4 address of the time server	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
`port`	UDP port of the time server	1025 … 36564
`default`	Default value for the UDP port	123
`poll`	Keyword for the time after which the time of day is requested again	-
`seconds`	Value for the time in seconds	64 … 1024

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The connection to a server is configured on the NTP client.

Additional notes

You delete the connection to a server with the `no ntp server id` command.

6.2.3.2 no ntp server id

Description

With this command, you delete the connection to a server on the NTP client.

Requirement

You are in the NTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-ntp)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ntp server id <1-4>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`id`	Number of the NTP server.	1 … 4

Result

The connection to a server is deleted on the NTP client.

Further notes

You configure the connection to a server with the `ntp server id` command.

6.2.3.3 ntp server id secure

Description

With this command, you configure the parameters for authentication.

Requirement

You are in the NTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-ntp)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ntp server id <1-4> secure [ntpkeyid <1-65534>] [hashalg {des-cbc|
md5|sha1}] [ntp-key <secret-key-string(1-128)>]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`id`	NTP server index to which the parameters relate	1 ... 4
`secure`	Key for the authentication	-
`keyid`	Authentication key ID	The entry must exist on the NTP server. 1 ... 65534
`hashalg`	Authentication key format	des-cbc md5 sha1
`ntp-key`	Keyword for the authentication key	-
`secret-key-string`	Authentication key	The key can only contain printable ASCII characters. The entry must match the key stored on the NTP server.

Result

The parameters are configured.

Further notes

You display the settings and other information with the `show ntp server` command.

6.2.3.4 ntp secure

Description

With this command, you enable the "Secure NTP Client only" function. The device receives the system time from a secure NTP server.

Requirement

- You are in NTP configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config-ntp)#`
- The parameters for authentication (key ID, hash algorithm, key) are configured.

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ntp secure
```

Result

The function is enabled.

Additional notes

You disable the function with the `no ntp secure` command.

You configure the parameters for authentication with the `ntp server id` command.

6.2.3.5 no ntp secure

Description

With this command, you disable the "Secure NTP Client only" function.

Requirement

You are in NTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-ntp)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ntp secure
```

Result

The function is disabled.

Additional notes

You enable the function with the `ntp secure` command.

6.2.3.6 ntp time diff

Description

With this command, you configure the time difference between the device and the NTP server.

Requirement

You are in the NTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-ntp)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ntp time diff <(+/-hh:mm)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
+	Time zones to the west of the NTP server time zone
-	Time zones to the east of the NTP server time zone
hh	Number of hours difference
mm	Number of minutes difference

Enter the number of hours and number of minutes with two digits each.

Default: No time difference.

Result

The time difference between the device and the NTP server is configured.

6.3 SNTP client

This section describes commands relevant for configuration of the SNTP client.

6.3.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

6.3.1.1 show sntp broadcast-mode status

Description

This command shows the current configuration of the broadcast mode of SNTP.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show sntp broadcast-mode status
```

Result

The current SNTP broadcast configuration is displayed.

6.3.1.2 show sntp unicast-mode status

Description

This command shows the current configuration of the unicast mode of SNTP.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show sntp unicast-mode status
```

Result

The current SNTP unicast configuration is displayed.

6.3.1.3 show sntp status

Description

This command shows the settings of the Simple Network Time Protocol.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show sntp status
```

Result

The settings of SNTP are displayed.

6.3.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

6.3.2.1 sntp

Description

With this command, you change to the SNTP configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
sntp
```

Result

You are now in the SNTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-sntp)#
```

Further notes

You exit the SNTP configuration modewith the `end` or `exit` command.

6.3.3 Commands in the SNTP configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the SNTP configuration mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `sntp` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the SNTP configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the SNTP configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in SNTP configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

6.3.3.1 sntp client addressing-mode

Description

With this command, you configure the addressing mode of the SNTP client as unicast or broadcast.

Requirement

- The SNTP client is activated.
- You are in the SNTP Configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-sntp)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
sntp client addressing-mode{unicast|broadcast}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`unicast`	configures the SNTP client in unicast mode	Default: unicast enabled
`broadcast`	configures the SNTP client in broadcast mode	Supports only IPv4 addresses

Result

The addressing mode of the SNTP client is configured.

Further notes

You display this setting and other information with the `show sntp status` command.

You display the settings for the unicast mode with the `show sntp unicast-mode status` command.

You display the settings for the broadcast mode with the `show sntp broadcast-mode status` command.

6.3.3.2 sntp time diff

Description

With this command, you configure the time difference of the system time relative to the UTC time.

Requirement

- You are in the SNTP Configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-sntp)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`sntp time diff <(+/-hh:mm)>`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`+`	Time zones to the west of the SNTP server time zone
`-`	Time zones to the east of the SNTP server time zone
`hh`	Number of hours difference
`mm`	Number of minutes difference

Enter the time difference as follows:

- with sign
- without spaces
- Hours and minutes both two digits (with leading zero)

Default: no time difference

Result

The time zone of the system time is configured.

Further notes

You can display the settings of this function and other information with the `show sntp status` command.

6.3.3.3 sntp unicast-server ipv4

Description

With this command, you configure an SNTP unicast server.

Note

To avoid time jumps, make sure that there is only one time server in the network.

Requirement

- The addressing mode of the SNTP client is configured as "unicast".
- You are in the SNTP configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-sntp)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
sntp unicast-server ipv4 <ucast_addr> [port<1025-36564>]
[poll<seconds(16-16284)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IP address	-
`ucast_addr`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`port`	UDP port of the time server	1025 … 36564 Default: 123
`poll`	Keyword for the time after which the time of day is requested again	-
`seconds`	Value for the time in seconds	16 ... 16284

Result

The SNTP unicast server is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no sntp unicast-server ipv4` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show sntp unicast-mode status` command.

6.3.3.4 no sntp unicast-server ipv4

Description

With this command, you delete the attributes for an SNTP unicast server and reset the address.

Requirement

You are in the SNTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-sntp)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no sntp unicast-server ipv4<ucast_addr>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
`ucast_addr`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The SNTP unicast server is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `sntp unicast-server ipv4` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show sntp unicast-mode status` command.

6.4 PTP Client

The following devices support time-of-day synchronization with PTP:

- SCALANCE XC-200G

6.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

6.4.1.1 show ptp info

Description

This command shows the current settings for the Precision Time Protocol (PTP).

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
show ptp info [ interfaces [<interface-type> <interface-id>] ]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interfaces`	Keyword for a an interface name.	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface.	Enter a valid interface name.
`interface-id`	Slot no. and port no. of the interface.	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The current settings for the Precision Time Protocol (PTP) are displayed.

6.4.2 Commands in global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

6.4.2.1 ptp

Description

With this command, you enable the PTP Transparent Clock :function on the device.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ptp
```

Result

The PTP Transparent Clock function is enabled.

Additional notes

You show the current settings for the Precision Time Protocol (PTP) with the `show ptp info` command.

You disable the PTP Transparent Clock function on the device with the `no ptp` command.

6.4.2.2 no ptp

Description

With this command, you disable the PTP Transparent Clock :function on the device.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ptp
```

Result

The PTP Transparent Clock function is disabled.

Additional notes

You show the current settings for the Precision Time Protocol (PTP) with the `show ptp info` command.

You enable the PTP Transparent Clock function on the device with the `ptp` command.

6.4.2.3 ptp time diff

Description

With this command, you set the time zone for the Precision Time Protocol.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
ptp time diff <(+/-hh:mm)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`+/-hh:mm`	The value for the time difference.	Hours and minutes specified in the format `+/-hh:mm`

Result

The time zone for the Precision Time Protocol is specified.

Additional notes

You show the current settings for the Precision Time Protocol (PTP) with the `show ptp info` command.

6.4.2.4 ptp transparent-clock configuration

Description

With this command you change to the PT Transparent Clock configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
ptp transparent-clock configuration
```

Result

You are in the PTP Transparent Clock configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-ptp-tc)#
```

Additional notes

You show the current settings for the Precision Time Protocol (PTP) with the `show ptp info` command.

6.4.3 Commands in the PTP Transparent Clock configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the PTP Transparent Clock configuration mode.

In the Global configuration mode, enter the `ptp transparent-clock configuration` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the PTP Transparent Clock configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the PTP Transparent Clock configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in PTP Transparent Clock configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

6.4.3.1 delay-mechanism

Description

With this command, you specify which correction mechanism the Precision Time Protocol uses.

Requirement

You are in the PTP Transparent Clock configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-ptp-tc)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
delay-mechanism { end-to-end | peer-to-peer }
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`end-to-end`	The device operates as an end-to-end transparent clock.	With end-to-end synchronization with more than 2 slaves, freak values > 100 ns can occur in the offset.
`peer-to-peer`	The device operates as a peer-to-peer transparent clock.	-

Result

The correction mechanism for the Precision Time Protocol is specified.

Additional notes

You show the current settings for the Precision Time Protocol (PTP) with the `show ptp info` command.

You specify the primary domain with the `primary-domain` command.

6.4.3.2 primary-domain

Description

With this command, you specify the primary domain.

Requirement

You are in the PTP Transparent Clock configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-ptp-tc)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
primary-domain <domain-id(0-255)>}
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`domain-id`	The identifier of the primary domain.	0 ... 255

Result

The primary domain is specified.

Additional notes

You show the current settings for the Precision Time Protocol (PTP) with the `show ptp info` command.

You define the correction mechanism for the Precision Time Protocol with the `delay-mechanism` command

6.4.4 Commands in interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

6.4.4.1 ptp

Description

With this command, you enable the PTP Transparent Clock function for an interface.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ptp
```

Result

The PTP Transparent Clock function is enabled.

Additional notes

You show the current settings for the Precision Time Protocol (PTP) with the `show ptp info` command.

You disable the PTP Transparent Clock function for an interface with the `no ptp` command.

6.4.4.2 no ptp

Description

With this command, you disable the PTP Transparent Clock function for an interface.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ptp
```

Result

The PTP Transparent Clock function is disabled.

Additional notes

You show the current settings for the Precision Time Protocol (PTP) with the `show ptp info` command.

You enable the PTP Transparent Clock function for an interface with the `ptp` command.

6.4.4.3 ptp transparent-clock transport-mechanism

Description

With this command you choose how this port will handle PTP message data traffic. You can make different settings for the ports of a device, however, the relevant communications partner must support the selected transport mechanism.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ptp transparent-clock transport-mechanism { udp-ip-v4 | ethernet }
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`udp-ip-v4`	The device uses UDP as the transport mechanism.	Factory setting
`ethernet`	The device uses Ethernet as the transport mechanism.	-

Result

The transport mechanism is specified.

Network structures

7

This part contains the sections that describe the commands for configuring and managing various network structures.

The following technologies are available:

- The establishment of independent structures even across the boundaries of subnets using virtual networks (VLANs)
  This can result in the following advantages:
  - Administration:
    Devices can be grouped together to form a logical units regardless of their physical location
  - Performance:
    By prioritizing, time-critical data (process data, streams) can be given priority for transfer
  - Security:
    The transition between VLANs can only be controlled by an administrator
- Bundling of interfaces or connections between devices to increase the data transmission rate and reliability (link aggregation)
- Improved reliability by adapting the tree structure if transmission is disrupted (Spanning Tree)

7.1 VLAN

This section describes commands for configuring and managing virtual networks (VLANs).

With the following commands, note which "Base bridge mode" you are in. If you are in the "Transparent Bridge" mode, all settings relate to the management VLAN: VLAN 1.

You change the mode with the `base bridge-mode` command.

Commands for configuring and managing private VLANs are also described.

With a private VLAN (PVLAN) you can divide up the layer 2 broadcast domains of a VLAN.

A private VLAN consists of the following units:

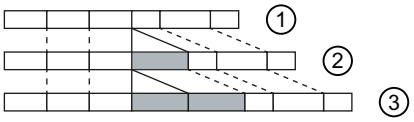
- A primary private VLAN (primary PVLAN)
  The VLAN that is divided up is called primary private VLAN.
- Secondary private VLANs (secondary PVLAN)
  Secondary PVLANs exist only within a primary PVLAN. Every secondary PVLAN has a specific VLAN ID and is connected to the primary PVLAN.
  Secondary PVLANs are divided into the following types:
  - Isolated Secondary PVLAN
    Devices within an Isolated Secondary PVLAN cannot communicate with each other via layer 2.
  - Community Secondary PVLAN
    Devices within a Community Secondary PVLAN can communicate with each other directly via layer 2. The devices cannot communicate with devices in other communities of the PVLAN via layer 2.

In addition, commands are described for configuring the VLAN tunnel.

With the Q-in-Q VLAN tunnel function it is possible to forward the data traffic from various customer networks with a VLAN tunnel via a provider network. Each customer network can have the total number VLANs available.

A VLAN tunnel is established between provider switches configured on the boundaries of a provider network. A provider switch has the following types of port:

- Access port
  The provider switch is connected to a customer network via an access port.
  - Incoming data traffic
    The incoming data traffic at an access port is treated as if it were untagged ①. All incoming frames are expanded by a tag with the port VID of the access port ②. With frames that are already tagged this means that they are expanded by a second 802.1Q tag ③, the outer VLAN tag.



  - Outgoing data traffic
    With outgoing data traffic at an access port the outer VLAN tag is removed again.
- Core port
  The provider switch is connected to a provider network via a core port.
  Core ports are members in the port VLAN of the access port or are configured with the port type "Switch-Port VLAN Trunk".

When the frames reach the relevant access port, they are expanded by a tag with the port VID of the access port and tunneled through the provider network. As soon as the frames leave the provider network, the outer VLAN tag (PVID) is removed again. The frames are forwarded in their original form. The priority of the frame is retained.

7.1.1 The "show" commands VLAN bridge)

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.1.1.1 show mac-address-table

Description

This command shows the table with the static and dynamic unicast MAC addresses and multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table [vlan <vlan-range>] [address
<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>] [interface <interface-type> <interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN or VLAN range	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN or VLAN range	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen or a space.
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries of the MAC addresses table are displayed.

7.1.1.2 show mac-address-table count

Description

With this command, you show the number of MAC addresses for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table count [vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the total number of entries is displayed for all VLANs.

Result

The number of MAC addresses for the selected VLAN is displayed.

7.1.1.3 show mac-address-table dynamic multicast

Description

This command shows the table with the dynamic multicast MAC addresses assigned by the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table dynamic multicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
     [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
     [{interface<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The dynamic multicast MAC addresses are displayed.

7.1.1.4 show mac-address-table dynamic unicast

Description

This command shows the table with the dynamic unicast MAC addresses assigned by the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table dynamic unicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
     [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>][{interface<interface-type>
     <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen without spaces.
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The dynamic unicast MAC addresses are displayed.

7.1.1.5 show mac-address-table static multicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table static multicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
  [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>][{interface<interface-type><interface-
id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen without spaces.
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static multicast MAC addresses are displayed.

7.1.1.6 show mac-address-table static unicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static unicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table static unicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
  [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>][{interface<interface-type><interface-
id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen without spaces.
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static unicast MAC addresses are displayed.

7.1.1.7 show vlan

Description

This command shows the specific information for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show vlan [brief | id <vlan-range> | summary]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`brief`	Shows brief information about all VLANs	-
`id`	Keyword for a VLAN or VLAN range	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN or VLAN range	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen or a space.
`summary`	Shows a summary of the VLANs	

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries of all available interfaces are displayed.

Result

The information for the selected VLAN is displayed.

7.1.1.8 show vlan device info

Description

This command shows all the global information that is valid for all VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show vlan device info
```

Result

The global information is displayed.

7.1.1.9 show vlan learning params

Description

This command shows the parameters for the automatic learning of addresses for selected or all VLANs (active and inactive VLANs).

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show vlan learning params [vlan <vlan-range>]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN or VLAN range	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN or VLAN range	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen or a space.

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries of all available interfaces are displayed.

Result

The settings for the automatic learning of addresses are displayed.

7.1.1.10 show vlan port config

Description

This command shows the VLAN-specific information for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show vlan port config [{port <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a port	-
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries of all available interfaces are displayed.

Result

The information about the ports is displayed.

7.1.1.11 show vlan private-vlan

Description

This command shows the specific information for all or for a selected private VLAN type.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show vlan private-vlan [{primary|isolated|community}]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`pvlan-type`	Displays information on all PVLAN types.	-
`primary`	Displays information on the Primary PVLAN.	-
`isolated`	Displays information on the Isolated Secondary PVLANs.	-
`community`	Displays information on the Community Secondary PVLANs.	-

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries of all available types are displayed.

Result

The information for the selected private VLAN type is displayed.

Further notes

You define a private VLAN type `private-vlan` command.

7.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode (VLAN bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.1.2.1 base bridge-mode

Description

With this command, you configure whether or not the device forwards frames with VLAN tags transparently (IEEE 802.1D/Transparent Bridge) or takes VLAN information into account (IEEE 802.1Q/VLAN Bridge).

Note

Changing base bridge mode

Note the section "Changing base bridge mode". This section describes how a change affects the existing configuration. Before device mode is switched, a security prompt takes place.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
base bridge-mode {dot1d-bridge|dot1q-vlan} [force]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / notes
`dot1d-bridge`	Sets the mode "Transparent Bridge" for the device. VLAN tags are not taken into account or changed but are forwarded transparently. In this mode, you cannot create any VLANs. Only a management VLAN is available: VLAN 1.	Default setting with PROFINET variants
`dot1q-vlan`	Sets the mode "VLAN Bridge" for the device. VLAN information is taken into account.	Default setting with EtherNet/IP variants
`force`	When this parameter is executed, there is no security prompt when you switch device mode. This enables you to integrate the command in a script.	Take note of the effects on the existing configuration described in the section "Changing base bridge mode".

Result

The device mode is configured.

Changing base bridge mode

802.1D Transparent Bridge → 802.1Q VLAN Bridge

If you change the Base bridge mode from Transparent Bridge to VLAN Bridge, this has the following effects

- All static and dynamic unicast entries are deleted.
- All static and dynamic multicast entries are deleted.
- With spanning tree you can set the following protocol compatibility: STP, RSTP and MSTP

802.1Q VLAN Bridge → 802.1D Transparent Bridge

If you change the Base bridge mode from VLAN Bridge to Transparent Bridge, this has the following effects

- All VLAN configurations are deleted.
- A management VLAN is created: VLAN 1.
- All static and dynamic unicast entries are deleted.
- All static and dynamic multicast entries are deleted.
- With spanning tree you can set the following protocol compatibility: STP and RSTP
- You cannot use GVRP.
- You cannot use guest VLAN.
- The VLAN assignment cannot be adopted from the RADIUS server.
- You cannot configure the port type.
- Defined access rules must be valid for all VLANs: `authorized-manager ip-source`

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other VLAN information with the `show vlan device info` command.

7.1.2.2 bridge-mode

Description

With this command you assign the device a role therefore specifying whether or not the device can manage outer VLAN tags.

If you change the role, the layer 2 port settings (VLAN, spanning tree) are reset to the factory settings and the device is restarted.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
bridge-mode {customer | provider }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`customer`	The device behaves like a standard IE switch.	-
`provider`	In addition to the properties of the role "Customer" the device also has the possibility of managing outer VLAN tags. In this role, you can use the function Q-in-Q VLAN tunnel.	The "Provider" role has the following effects on the VLAN tag: All data packets that are not sent from an access port receive a VLAN tag. If the VLAN configuration of the other devices is not adapted accordingly, network loops can occur or network segments may no longer be reachable.

Result

The role of the device is specified.

Further notes

You display the role of the device with the `show vlan device info` command.

7.1.2.3 interface range

Description

With this command, you can put several interfaces or the interfaces of VLANs together and configure them together. The configurations are valid for all interfaces of the specified range.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
interface range
(
  {<interface-type> <0/a-b,0/c,...>}
```

```
  {vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)> - <vlan-id(2-4094)>}
)
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Keyword for an interface	Enter a valid interface.
`0/a-b, 0/c,...`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	2 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you want to address several VLANs with this command, you must insert a blank before and after the hyphen, for example `interface range vlan 5 - 10`.

Result

The interfaces or interfaces of VLANs were put together to form an interface range.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-range)#
```

The configuration commands you enter in a mode apply to all interfaces of this area.

Further notes

With the `no interface range` command, you remove VLANs from this range or break it up.

7.1.2.4 no interface range

Description

With this command, you remove the interfaces or interfaces of VLANs from the interface range or break it up if you first remove all previously added interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no interface range vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)> - <vlan-id(2-4094)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	2 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you address several VLANs, you must insert a blank before and after the hyphen, for example `no interface range vlan 5 - 10`.

Result

The VLANs have been removed from the specified interface area.

Further notes

With the `interface range` command, you can put several interfaces or VLANs together to be able to configure them together.

7.1.2.5 mgmt vlan

Description

With this command, you change the agent VLAN ID. You can only use VLANs that have already been configured.

Note

Changing the agent VLAN ID

If the configuration PC is connected directly to the device via Ethernet and you change the agent VLAN ID, the device is no longer reachable via Ethernet following the change.

Note

The `mgmt vlan` command is only available with the following devices:

- SCALANCE XR-300
- SCALANCE XB-200

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mgmt vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

Result

The Agent VLAN ID has been changed.

Additional notes

You show the configuration of the IP interfaces with the `show ip interface` command.

7.1.2.6 vlan

Description

With this command, you create a VLAN on the device and change to the VLAN configuration mode.

In the provider backbone bridge mode, this command is used to create user, service and backbone VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

Do not enter any leading zeros with the number of the VLAN.

Result

The VLAN is created.

You are now in the VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Further notes

You delete the VLAN with the `no vlan` command.

You can display information about the VLAN with the `show vlan` command.

7.1.2.7 no vlan

Description

With this command, you delete a VLAN on the device.

Requirement

- The VLAN must not be assigned to a physical port.
- You are in the Global Configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameter:

```
no vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

The VLAN with number 1 cannot be deleted.

Result

The VLAN is deleted

Further notes

With the `vlan` command, you create a VLAN on the device.

You can display information about the VLAN with the `show vlan` command.

7.1.2.8 vlan range

Description

With this command, you can select several VLANs and configure them together. The configurations are valid for all selected VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
vlan range <vlan-id(1-4094)> - <vlan-id(2-4094)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	2 ... 4094

Enter a space before and after the hyphen, e.g. `vlan range 5 - 10`.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The command prompt is as follows:

```
CLI(config-vlan-range)#
```

Configuration commands you enter with this command prompt apply to all selected VLANs.

Further notes

With the command `exit`, you return to the Global configuration mode.

7.1.2.9 vlan tag-priority override

Description

With this command, you specify whether the priority of an incoming frame is overwritten by the priority configured for a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
vlan tag-priority override {enable | disable}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`enable`	The priority configured for a VLAN replaces the priority existing in the VLAN tag of the frame.	-
`disable`	The VLAN tag of the frame remains unchanged.	-

Result

Overwriting of the VLAN tag is enabled or disabled.

Additional notes

You configure the priority of a VLAN with the `priority` command.

You reset the priority of a VLAN to the default value with the `no priority` command.

7.1.3 Commands in the Interface configuration mode (VLAN Bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.1.3.1 private-vlan mapping

Description

With this command you specify from which secondary PVLANs the IP interface of the primary PVLAN will be reachable.

Requirement

- The interface is configured as an IP interface.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
private-vlan mapping [{add | remove}] <vlan-list>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`add`	Adds secondary PVLANs.	-
`remove`	Removes secondary PVLANs.	-
`vlan-list`	VLAN ID of the secondary PVLAN	Separate the PVLANs with commas if you specify several PVLANs.

Result

The IP interface of the primary PVLAN can be reached from the selected secondary PVLANs.

Further notes

You delete the link between secondary PVLANs and the IP interface of the primary PVLAN with the command `no private-vlan mapping`.

You display this setting with the `show interfaces` command with the `private-vlan mapping` parameter.

7.1.3.2 no private-vlan mapping

Description

With this command you delete the link between secondary PVLANs and the IP interface of the primary PVLAN with the command .

Requirement

- The interface is configured as an IP interface.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no private-vlan mapping
```

Result

The IP interface of the primary PVLAN cannot be reached from the selected secondary PVLANs.

Further notes

You configure a link between secondary PVLANs and the IP interface of the primary PVLAN with the command `private-vlan mapping`.

You display this setting with the `show interfaces` command with the `private-vlan mapping` parameter.

7.1.3.3 switchport acceptable-frame-type

Description

With this command, you configure which types of frames are accepted.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
switchport acceptable-frame-type{all|tagged|
untaggedAndPrioritytagged}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`all`	All frames are accepted.	Default On a ring port only the parameter "`all`" is supported.
`tagged`	The device discards all untagged frames. The device forwards all tagged frames.	-
`untaggedAndPrioritytagged`	The device discards all tagged frames. The device forwards all untagged frames and frames with a priority.	-

Result

The setting is enabled.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no switchport acceptable-frame-type` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

7.1.3.4 no switchport acceptable-frame-type

Description

With this command, you reset the setting for the types of frames accepted by the interface to the default value.

The default value is `all`.

The interface accepts tagged and untagged frames.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no switchport acceptable-frame-type
```

Result

The setting is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `switchport acceptable-frame-type` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan port config`command.

7.1.3.5 switchport access vlan

Description

With this command, you assign an VLAN to an interface and configure the port VLAN identifier (PVID) for it.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
switchport access vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

Result

The Interface is added to the VLAN as an untagged port and the corresponding VLAN ID is set.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no switchport access vlan` command.

You display the setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

7.1.3.6 no switchport access vlan

Description

With this command, you reset the setting for the port VLAN identifier (PVID) for an interface to the default value.

The default value is 1.

Requirement

You are in the interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no switchport access vlan
```

Result

The setting is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `switchport access vlan` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan port config`command.

7.1.3.7 switchport mode

Description

With this command, you specify the operating mode for the switch port.

Requirement

- The interface is configured as a switch port.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
switchport mode { access | trunk | hybrid }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`access`	Configures the port as an access port. Access ports belong to a provider switch that supports the function Q-in-Q VLAN-Tunnel. Connect a customer network to access ports.	GVRP must be disabled on the port. On the port for the `acceptable-frame-type` the value `untaggedAndPrioritytagged` must be set.
`trunk`	Configures the port as a trunk port that only forwards tagged frames. The port can then only be configured as the trunk port if the port is not entered in any VLAN that exchanges untagged frames. For the trunk port to forward tagged frames, all VLAN IDs to which the trunk port forwards frames must be stored. If a new VLAN is created, the VLAN ID is automatically entered at the trunk port. With a trunk port, the VLAN assignment is dynamic. Static configurations can only be created if, in addition to the trunk port property, the port is also entered statically as a member in the VLANs involved. An example of a static configuration is the assignment of the multicast groups in certain VLANs. If you execute the "`acceptable frame-type all`" command at the trunk port, the port also receives untagged frames.	-
`hybrid`	Configures the port as a hybrid port that accepts tagged and untagged frames.	Default: `hybrid`

Result

The operating mode is configured.

Further notes

You reset the operating mode to the default with the `no switchport mode` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

You configure the interface as a switch port with the `switchport` command.

7.1.3.8 no switchport mode

Description

With this command, you reset the operating mode for the switch port to the default.

The default value is Hybrid.

Requirement

- The interface is configured as a switch port.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no switchport mode
```

Result

The setting is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the operating mode with the `switchport mode` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

You configure the interface as a switch port with the `switchport` command.

7.1.3.9 switchport mode private vlan

Description

With this command, you specify the operating mode for the private VLAN port.

Requirement

- The interface is configured as a switch port.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
switchport mode private-vlan {promiscuous | host}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`promiscuous`	Configures the port as a promiscuous port. Promiscuous ports belong to a primary PVLAN. Connect devices to promiscuous ports that are intended to communicate with all other devices of the PVLAN.	GVRP must be disabled on the port.
`host`	Configures the port as a host port. Host ports belong to a secondary PVLAN. Connect devices to host ports that are only intended to communicate with certain devices of the PVLAN.	

Result

The operating mode for the private VLAN port is configured.

Further notes

You display this setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

You configure the interface as a switch port with the `switchport` command.

You configure a host port with the `switchport private-vlan host-association` command.

You configure a promiscuous port with the `switchport private-vlan mapping` command.

7.1.3.10 switchport mode dot1q-tunnel

Description

With this command, you enable the Q-in-Q VLAN tunnel function. Frames received at the port are expanded with an outer VLAN tag, the PVID of the port.

Requirement

- The port is configured as an access port.
- Spanning tree is disabled on the port.
- GMRP is disabled on the port.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
```

Result

The Q-in-Q VLAN tunnel function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no switchport mode dot1q-tunnel` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

You configure the PVID with the `switchport pvid` command.

You configure the operating mode of a port with the `switchport mode` command.

You disable the spanning tree function with the `no spanning tree` command.

If you want to enable or disable the GMRP function for a specific interface on the device, use the `no gmrp` command in the Interface configuration mode.

7.1.3.11 no switchport mode dot1q-tunnel

Description

With this command, you disable the Q-in-Q VLAN tunnel function.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.
The command prompt is:
`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no switchport mode dot1q-tunnel
```

Result

The Q-in-Q VLAN tunnel function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `switchport mode dot1q-tunnel` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

7.1.3.12 switchport priority default

Description

With this command, you configure the priority default for the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
switchport priority default <(0-7)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
-	Value for the priority default	0 ... 7 Default: 0

Result

The setting for the default priority of the interface is configured.

Further notes

You reset the priority default to the original default with the `no switchport priority default` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

7.1.3.13 no switchport priority default

Description

With this command, you reset the priority default for the interface to the default value.

The default value is 0.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no switchport priority default
```

Result

The setting is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the priority default with the `switchport priority default` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

7.1.3.14 switchport private-vlan host-association

Description

With this command, you configure a host port.

The following settings are made:

- The interface becomes an untagged member of the primary PVLAN and its secondary PVLANs.
- With incoming untagged frames, the port VLAN-ID of the secondary VLAN is set.
- Ingress filtering is enabled.

Requirement

- The interface is configured as a host port.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
switchport private-vlan host-association <primary-vlan-id (1-4094)>
<secondary-vlan-id (1-4094)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`primary-vlan-id`	VLAN ID of the primary PVLAN	1 ... 4094
`secondary-vlan-id`	VLAN ID of the secondary PVLAN	1 ... 4094

Result

The interface is configured.

Further notes

You delete the configuration with the `no switchport private-vlan host-association` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands `show vlan port config`, `show vlan` and `show vlan private-vlan`.

You configure the interface as a host port with the `switchport mode` command.

7.1.3.15 no switchport private-vlan host-association

Description

With this command, you delete the configuration of a host port.

Requirement

- The interface is configured as a host port.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no switchport private-vlan host-association
```

Result

The configuration is deleted.

Further notes

You configure a host port with the `switchport private-vlan host-association` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands `show vlan port config`, `show vlan` and `show vlan private-vlan`.

You configure the interface as a host port with the command.

7.1.3.16 switchport private-vlan mapping

Description

With this command, you configure a promiscuous port.

The following settings are made:

- The interface becomes an untagged member of the primary PVLAN and all secondary PVLANs.
- With incoming untagged frames, the port VLAN-ID of the primary VLAN is set.
- Ingress filtering is enabled.

Requirement

- The interface is configured as a promiscuous port.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
switchport private-vlan mapping <primary-vlan-id (1-4094)> [{add | remove}] [<secondary_vlan_list>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`primary-vlan-id`	VLAN ID of the primary PVLAN	1 ... 4094
`add`	Adds secondary PVLANs.	-
`remove`	Removes secondary PVLANs.	-
`secondary_vlan_list`	VLAN ID of the secondary PVLAN	1 ... 4094 Separate the PVLANs with commas if you specify several PVLANs.

Result

The interface is configured.

Further notes

You delete the configuration with the `no switchport private-vlan mapping` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands `show vlan port config`, `show vlan` and `show vlan private-vlan`.

You configure the interface as a promiscuous port with the `switchport mode` command.

7.1.3.17 no switchport private-vlan mapping

Description

With this command, you delete the configuration of a promiscuous port.

Requirement

- The interface is configured as a promiscuous port.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no switchport private-vlan mapping
```

Result

The configuration is deleted.

Further notes

You configure a promiscuous port with the `switchport private-vlan mapping` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands `show vlan port config`, `show vlan` and `show vlan private-vlan`.

You configure the interface as a promiscuous port with the `switchport mode` command.

7.1.3.18 switchport pvid

Description

With this command, you assign an interface to a VLAN and configure the port VLAN identifier (PVID) for it. If a received frame has no VLAN tag, it has a tag added with the VLAN ID specified here and is sent according to the switch rules for the port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
switchport pvid <vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

Result

The PVID is configured

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no switchport pvid` command.

You configure the VLAN ID with the `switchport access vlan` command.

You display the setting and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

7.1.3.19 no switchport pvid

Description

With this command, you reset the setting for the port VLAN identifier (PVID) for an interface to the default value.

The default value is 1.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no switchport pvid
```

Result

The setting is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `switchport pvid` command.

You configure the VLAN ID with the `switchport access vlan` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan port config` command.

7.1.3.20 tia interface

Description

With this command, you enable or disable the property TIA interface. The TIA interface defines the VLAN on which the PROFINET functionalities are available. This mainly affects the device search with or via DCP.

Requirement

- The interface is enabled.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode of the VLAN interface.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli (config-if-vlan-$$$) #`
  $$$ stands for the numbering of the interface.

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:
`tia-interface`

Result

The TIA interface property is enabled exclusively for the specified VLAN. The function was disabled on the other interfaces.

Further notes

Note that only one VLAN interface can become the TIA interface.

7.1.4 Commands in the VLAN configuration mode (VLAN Bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the VLAN Configuration mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `vlan $$$` command to change to this mode. When doing this, you need to replace the `$$$` placeholders with the relevant VLAN ID.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the VLAN Configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the VLAN Configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global Configuration mode.
- If you exit the VLAN Configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in VLAN configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.1.4.1 name

Description

With this command, you assign a name to the VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
name <vlan-name>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan-name`	Name that will be assigned to the VLAN	max. 32 characters

Result

The VLAN is assigned a name.

Further notes

You delete name assignment for a VLAN with the `no name` command.

7.1.4.2 no name

Description

With this command, you delete the name assignment for a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no name
```

Result

The name of the VLAN is deleted.

Further notes

You assign the VLAN a name with the command `name`.

7.1.4.3 ports

Description

With this command, you generate a list that specifies the behavior of the interfaces and replaces the existing VLAN configuration.

- Member Port (tagged port)
  The interface is added permanently to the list of incoming and outgoing connections. Tagged and untagged frames are transferred.
- Untagged Port
  The interface transfers untagged frames. If the VLAN ID (PVID) is set, incoming untagged frames are given a tag with the VLAN ID specified there. Received frames with a VLAN ID are forwarded according to the VLAN ID. With outgoing frames, the tag with the VLAN ID is removed.
- Forbidden Ports
  This interface is not used for communication in a VLAN.

The "tagged port" and "untagged port" you specify with this command are used for outgoing data traffic.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ports
   (
    [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
    [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
    [port-channel<a,b,c-d>]
   )
   [
    untagged<interface-type> <0/a-b,0/c,...>
    (
     [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
     [port-channel <a,b,c-d>]
     [all]
    )
   ]
   [
    forbidden<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>
    [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
    [portchannel<a,b,c-d>]
   ]
   [name<vlan-name>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`/a-b,0/c,...`	Port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel	-
`a,b,c-d`	Port no. of the interface	Enter a valid interface name
`untagged`	Keyword for interfaces or ports that transfer data packets without VLAN marking	-
`all`	Specifies that all interfaces or ports are set to "untagged"	-
`forbidden`	Keyword for forbidden interfaces or ports	-
`name`	Keyword for the name assignment	-
`vlan-name`	Name of the VLAN	max. 32 characters

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The existing VLAN configuration is replaced. To add individual interfaces, you need to recreate the full list.

Further notes

You display details of the function with the `show vlan` command.

You reset the settings with the `no ports` command.

7.1.4.4 no ports

Description

With this command you remove all ports i.e. Member Ports (M), Untagged Member Ports (U) and Forbidden Ports (F) from a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ports
   (
    [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
    [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
    [port-channel<a,b,c-d>]
    [all]
   )
   [
    untagged<interface-type> <0/a-b,0/c,...>
    (
     [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
     [port-channel <a,b,c-d>]
     [all]
    )
   ]
   [
    (
     forbidden<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>
     [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
     [portchannel<a,b,c-d>]
     [all]
```

```
 )
]
[name<vlan-name>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
`/a-b,0/c,...`	Port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel	-
`a,b,c-d`	Port no. of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`untagged`	Keyword for interfaces or ports that transfer data packets without VLAN marking	-
`all`	This parameter appears at several points in the command. • `no ports all` This command removes all Member Ports (Tagged Member - M) from the VLAN. • `no ports untagged all` This command removes all Untagged Member Ports (U) from the VLAN. Afterwards the ports are Tagged Members (M) in the VLAN. • `no ports forbidden all` This command removes all Forbidden Ports (F) from the VLAN.	-
`forbidden`	Keyword for forbidden interfaces or ports	-
`name`	Keyword for the name assignment	-
`vlan-name`	Name of the VLAN	max. 32 characters

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The ports are removed from the VLAN configuration.

Further notes

It is possible to remove individual ports from a VLAN configuration without needing to rewrite the entire configuration.

You display details of the function with the `show vlan` command.

You configure the setting with the `ports` command.

7.1.4.5 priority

Description

With this command, you specify which Class of Service (COS) is assigned to the package on transmission. This does not change the Tag Control Information (TCI) of the package, however. If you want to overwrite the COS information in the package, you need to specify the `update-tag-priority` parameter.

Requirement

You are in VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
priority <prio (0-7)> [update-tag-priority]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`prio`	Value of the priority	0 ... 7 Default: 0
`update-tag-priority`	Keyword for overwriting class of service information in the package.	-

Result

The VLAN has been assigned a priority.

Additional notes

You reset the priority to the default value with the `no priority` command.

You enable the priority with the `priority-enable` command.

You disable the priority with the `no priority-enable` command.

You display the current priority with the `show vlan` command.

You configure the assignment of the priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

7.1.4.6 no priority

Description

With this command, you reset the priority of the VLAN back to the default value.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no priority
```

Result

The priority of the VLAN is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You change the priority with the `priority`command.

You enable the priority with the `priority-enable` command.

You disable the priority with the `no priority-enable` command.

You display the current priority with the `show vlan` command.

You configure the assignment of the priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

7.1.4.7 priority-enable

Description

With this command, you enable the priority of a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
priority-enable
```

Result

The priority of the VLAN is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the priority with the `no priority-enable` command.

You change the priority with the `priority`command.

You reset the priority to the default value with the `no priority` command.

You display the current priority with the `show vlan` command.

7.1.4.8 no priority-enable

Description

With this command, you disable the priority of a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no priority-enable
```

Result

The priority of the VLAN is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the priority with the `priority-enable` command.

You change the priority with the `priority`command.

You reset the priority to the default value with the `no priority` command.

You display the current priority with the `show vlan` command.

7.1.4.9 private-vlan

Description

With this command you define a VLAN as a private VLAN and specify the PVLAN type.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
private-vlan { primary | isolated | community }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`primary`	With this type, you define a primary PVLAN. The primary PVLAN uses the VLAN ID of the VLAN.	-
`isolated`	With this type, you define a secondary PVLAN. Devices within an Isolated Secondary PVLAN cannot communicate with each other via layer 2. The secondary PVLAN has a specific VLAN ID.	-
`community`	With this type, you define a secondary PVLAN. The devices in this secondary PVLAN can communicate with each other via layer 2. The secondary PVLAN has a specific VLAN ID.	-

Result

The PVLAN is defined and the PVLAN type specified.

Additional notes

You delete the configuration as a private VLAN with the `no private-vlan` command.

You display this setting with the `show vlan private-vlan` command.

7.1.4.10 no private-vlan

Description

With this command, you delete the configuration as a private VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no private-vlan
```

Result

The VLAN is not a private VLAN.

Further notes

You define a VLAN as a private VLAN and specify the PVLAN type with the command `private-vlan`.

You display this setting with the `show vlan private-vlan` command.

7.1.4.11 private-vlan association

Description

With this command, you assign secondary PVLANs to a primary PVLAN.

Requirement

- The interface is configured as a primary PVLAN.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
private-vlan association [{add|remove}] <secondary_Vlan_list>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`add`	Adds a secondary PVLAN..	-
`remove`	Removes a secondary PVLAN..	-
`secondary_Vlan_list`	Number of the secondary PVLAN	Separate the PVLANs with commas if you specify several PVLANs.

Result

The secondary PVLANs are assigned to the primary PVLAN.

Further notes

You delete the link between secondary PVLANs and a primary PVLAN with the command `no private-vlan association`.

You display this setting with the `show interfaces` command.

You configure a an interface as a primary PVLAN with the `private-vlan` command.

7.1.4.12 no private-vlan association

Description

With this command you delete the link between secondary PVLANs and a primary PVLAN.

Requirement

- The interface is configured as a primary PVLAN.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no private-vlan association
```

Result

The secondary PVLANs are not assigned to the primary PVLAN.

Further notes

You assign secondary PVLANs to a primary PVLAN with the command `private-vlan association`.

You display this setting with the command.

You configure a an interface as a primary PVLAN with the `private-vlan` command.

7.1.5 The "show" commands (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.1.5.1 show dot1d mac-address-table

Description

This command shows the table with the static and dynamic unicast entries and the dynamic multicast entries.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table [address <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
     [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	Specify a valid MAC address.
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries are displayed.

7.1.5.2 show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast [address
<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
     [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static multicast MAC addresses are displayed.

7.1.5.3 show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static unicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast [address
<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
     [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static unicast MAC addresses are displayed.

7.1.5.4 show vlan device info

Description

This command shows all the global information that is valid for all VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show vlan device info
```

Result

The global information is displayed.

7.1.6 Commands in the global configuration mode (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.1.6.1 base bridge-mode

Description

With this command, you configure whether or not the device forwards frames with VLAN tags transparently (IEEE 802.1D/Transparent Bridge) or takes VLAN information into account (IEEE 802.1Q/VLAN Bridge).

Note

Changing base bridge mode

Note the section "Changing base bridge mode". This section describes how a change affects the existing configuration. Before device mode is switched, a security prompt takes place.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
base bridge-mode {dot1d-bridge|dot1q-vlan} [force]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / notes
`dot1d-bridge`	Sets the mode "Transparent Bridge" for the device. VLAN tags are not taken into account or changed but are forwarded transparently. In this mode, you cannot create any VLANs. Only a management VLAN is available: VLAN 1.	Default setting with PROFINET variants
`dot1q-vlan`	Sets the mode "VLAN Bridge" for the device. VLAN information is taken into account.	Default setting with EtherNet/IP variants
`force`	When this parameter is executed, there is no security prompt when you switch device mode. This enables you to integrate the command in a script.	Take note of the effects on the existing configuration described in the section "Changing base bridge mode".

Result

The device mode is configured.

Changing base bridge mode

802.1D Transparent Bridge → 802.1Q VLAN Bridge

If you change the Base bridge mode from Transparent Bridge to VLAN Bridge, this has the following effects

- All static and dynamic unicast entries are deleted.
- All static and dynamic multicast entries are deleted.
- With spanning tree you can set the following protocol compatibility: STP, RSTP and MSTP

802.1Q VLAN Bridge → 802.1D Transparent Bridge

If you change the Base bridge mode from VLAN Bridge to Transparent Bridge, this has the following effects

- All VLAN configurations are deleted.
- A management VLAN is created: VLAN 1.
- All static and dynamic unicast entries are deleted.
- All static and dynamic multicast entries are deleted.
- With spanning tree you can set the following protocol compatibility: STP and RSTP
- You cannot use GVRP.
- You cannot use guest VLAN.
- The VLAN assignment cannot be adopted from the RADIUS server.
- You cannot configure the port type.
- Defined access rules must be valid for all VLANs: `authorized-manager ip-source`

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other VLAN information with the `show vlan device info` command.

7.1.6.2 vlan

Description

With this command, you change to the VLAN configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094 In the transparent bridge mode only VLAN 1 is available.

Do not enter any leading zeros with the number of the VLAN.

Result

You are now in the VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-1)#
```

Further notes

You can display information about the VLAN with the `show vlan device info` command.

7.2 Link aggregation

This section describes commands that configure or manage the bundling of interfaces or connections between devices.

7.2.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.2.1.1 show etherchannel

Description

This command shows the settings of link aggregations.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show etherchannel [[channel-group-number]
     {detail|load-balance|port|port-channel|summary|protocol}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`channel-group-number`	Number of the link aggregation
`detail`	Detailed display of the settings
`load-balance`	Shows which load balancing method is enabled
`port`	Information on the port of the link aggregation
`port-channel`	Information on the link aggregation
`summary`	Brief overview of the settings of a link aggregation
`protocol`	Specification of the protocol set for a link aggregation

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the settings of all channels will be displayed in detail.

Result

The settings of the link aggregation are displayed.

7.2.1.2 show interfaces etherchannel

Description

This command shows the interface-specific information for a link aggregation.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show interfaces[<interface-type><interface-id>]etherchannel`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select an interface, information for all interfaces is displayed.

Result

The interface-specific information for a link aggregation is displayed.

Note

When a port is assigned to a link aggregation but is not active (e.g. link down), the values displayed may differ from the values configured for the link aggregation.

If the port in the link aggregation becomes active, individual port configurations such as DCP forwarding are overwritten with the configured values of the link aggregation.

7.2.1.3 show lacp

Description

This command shows the information about the settings and information about the ports involved in the link aggregation. The number of sent and received packets is also displayed.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show lacp [<port-channel(1-8)>]{counters|neighbor[detail]}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`port-channel`	Number of the link aggregation	1 … 8
`counters`	Shows the values of the counters.	-
`neighbor`	Displays information on neighbor ports.	-
`detail`	Displays detailed information on neighbor ports.	-

If you do not select a link aggregation, information for all available interfaces is displayed.

Result

The information is displayed.

7.2.2 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.2.2.1 channel-group

Description

With this command, you add an interface to a link aggregation.

Requirement

- With the `interface po <channel-group-id(1-8)>` command, you have already generated a logical interface for a link aggregation.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`channel-group <channel-group-number(1-8)> mode{on|active|passive}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`channel-group-number`	Number of the link aggregation	1 … 8
`on`	Adds the interface without LACP to a link aggregation. This corresponds to manual bundling.	If you add a configured port to a link aggregation, the port adopts the configuration of the link aggregation. If you take the port out of the link aggregation, the settings of the port are reset to the factory settings.
`active`	The negotiation of a connection via LACP is started unconditionally.	-
`passive`	The negotiation of a connection via LACP is started when an LACP packet arrives from the connection partner.	-

Result

The link aggregation is configured.

7.2.2.2 no channel-group

Description

With this command, you remove the interface from a link aggregation.

Requirement

You are in the interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no channel-group
```

Result

The interface is deleted from the link aggregation.

7.2.2.3 lacp timeout

Description

With this command, you configure the length of the LACP timeout.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
lacp timeout {long|short}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`long`	The length of the LACP timeout is set to 90 seconds.	Default
`short`	The length of the LACP timeout is set to 3 seconds.	-

Result

The length of the LACP timeout is specified.

7.2.2.4 no lacp timeout

Description

With this command, you set the LACP timeout to the default value (90 seconds).

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no lacp timeout
```

Result

The length of the LACP timeout is 90 seconds.

7.3 Spanning Tree

The Spanning Tree Protocol is used to monitor a LAN for redundant connections. These are blocked and reactivated when necessary if there are changes to the network topology.

This section describes the commands of the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP), the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) and the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP).

Note

Avoiding bad configurations

When using the commands in this section, you should take particular care because a bad configuration of this function can have serious negative affects on the network.

7.3.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.3.1.1 show spanning-tree

Description

This command shows the settings of the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show spanning-tree [{ summary | blockedports | pathcost method }]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`summary`	Shows a summary
`blockedports`	Shows the blocked ports
`pathcost method`	Shows whether 16-bit (short) or 32 bit (long) values are used in the calculation

Result

The settings for the spanning tree function are displayed.

Further notes

You can show further settings for special aspects of the Spanning Tree Protocol with the following commands:

- `show spanning-tree active`
- `show spanning-tree bridge`
- `show spanning-tree detail`
- `show spanning-tree interface`
- `show spanning-tree root`
- `show spanning-tree mst`

7.3.1.2 show spanning-tree active

Description

This command shows the settings for the active ports of the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show spanning-tree active [detail]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`detail`	Shows settings in detail

Result

The settings for the active ports of the spanning tree function are displayed.

7.3.1.3 show spanning-tree bridge

Description

This command shows the settings of the spanning tree function of the bridge.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show spanning-tree bridge
 [{ address | forward-time | hello-time | id | max-age | protocol |
priority | detail }]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`address`	Shows the MAC address of the bridge
`forward-time`	Shows the time that the bridge is in the listening mode when changing from the blocking mode to the learning mode
`hello-time`	Shows the time after which the bridge sends configuration frames (BPDUs)
`id`	Shows the ID of the bridge
`max-age`	Shows the maximum age of the data packet after which it is deleted
`protocol`	Shows the protocol used
`priority`	Shows the priority of the bridge
`detail`	Shows detailed information about the Spanning Tree settings of the bridge

Result

The settings for the spanning tree function of the bridge are displayed.

7.3.1.4 show spanning-tree detail

Description

This command shows the detailed settings of the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show spanning-tree detail
```

Result

The detailed settings for the spanning tree function are displayed.

7.3.1.5 show spanning-tree interface

Description

This command shows the settings of the ports for the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show spanning-tree interface <interface-type> <interface-id>
 [{ cost | priority | portfast | rootcost | restricted-role |
 restricted-tcn | state | stats | detail }]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`cost`	Shows the port costs used to calculate the lowest-cost path.	-
`priority`	Shows the priority of the port.	-
`portfast`	Shows whether `spanning-tree portfast` is enabled.	-
`rootcost`	Shows the costs of the path to the root bridge.	-
`restricted-role`	Shows whether `spanning-tree restricted-role` is enabled.	-

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`restricted-tcn`	Shows whether `spanning-tree restricted-tcn` is enabled.	-
`state`	Shows the status of the interface.	-
`stats`	Shows the counters of the various BPDU transmissions.	-
`detail`	Shows detailed information about the spanning tree settings of the interface.	-

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The settings of the ports for the spanning tree function are displayed.

7.3.1.6 show spanning-tree interface layer2-gateway-port

Description

This command shows the settings of Layer 2 Gateway Port (L2GP). For example the priority, the MAC address and the status of L2GP are displayed.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show spanning-tree interface
[<interface-type><interface-id>]
layer2-gateway-port
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The settings for Layer 2 Gateway Port (L2GP) are displayed.

7.3.1.7 show spanning-tree mst

Description

This command shows various settings of the spanning tree configuration specific to a Common Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) instance or a selected instance of the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with one of the following parameter assignments:

```
show spanning-tree mst[<instance-id(1-64|4094)>][detail]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`instance-id`	Number of the instance or range of instances whose settings are displayed	• 1 ... 64 • 4094
`detail`	Shows detailed information about the selected interface	-

Result

The settings for the spanning tree configuration are displayed.

Further notes

You display the general settings for the Spanning Tree Protocol with the `show spanning-tree` command.

7.3.1.8 show spanning-tree mst configuration

Description

This command shows various settings for an instance of the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show spanning-tree mst configuration
```

Result

The settings of an instance of the Multiple Spanning Tree protocol are displayed.

Further notes

You display the general settings for the Spanning Tree Protocol with the `show spanning-tree` command.

7.3.1.9 show spanning-tree mst interface

Description

This command shows port-specific settings of a Multiple Spanning Tree configuration.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with one of the following parameter assignments:

```
show spanning-tree mst
   [<instance-id(1-64|4094)>] interface <interface-type><interface-
id>
   [{stats|hello-time|detail}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`instance-id`	Number of the instance or range of instances whose settings are displayed	• 1 ... 64 • 4094
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`stats`	Shows the number of incoming and outgoing packets for each path of the interface	-
`hello-time`	Shows the intervals at which the root switch sends its "Hello" message to the other switches	-
`detail`	Shows detailed information about the selected interface	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The port-specific settings are displayed.

Further notes

You display the general settings for the Spanning Tree Protocol with the `show spanning-tree` command.

7.3.1.10 show spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility

Description

This command shows whether or not the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function is enabled or disabled.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
show spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility
```

Result

The setting for the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function is displayed.

Further notes

You enable the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function with the `spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility` command.

You disable the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function with the `no spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility` command.

7.3.1.11 show spanning-tree root

Description

This command shows the settings of the root bridge for the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show spanning-tree root
   [{address|cost|forward-time|id|max-age|port|priority|detail}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`address`	Shows the MAC address of the root bridge
`cost`	Shows the costs of the connection to the root bridge.
`forward-time`	Shows the time that the bridge is in the listening mode when changing from the blocking mode to the learning mode
`id`	Shows the ID of the root bridge
`max-age`	Shows the maximum age of the data packet after which it is deleted
`port`	Shows the interface via which the spanning tree is set up
`priority`	Shows the priority of the bridge
`detail`	Shows detailed information about the root bridge

Result

The settings of the root bridge for the spanning tree function are displayed.

7.3.2 clear spanning-tree detected protocols

Description

With this command, you restart the protocol transmission process on a specific or on all interfaces and force renegotiation of the connection settings with the neighboring devices.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
clear spanning-tree detected protocols
   [{interface<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the process is restarted for all interfaces.

Result

The connection settings for spanning tree are renegotiated.

7.3.3 clear spanning-tree counters

Description

With this command, you reset all the statistical counters of the spanning tree function at the device and port level.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear spanning-tree counters
```

Result

The spanning tree counters are reset.

7.3.4 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.3.4.1 spanning-tree

Description

The Spanning Tree Protocol is used to monitor a LAN for redundant connections. These are blocked and reactivated when necessary if there are changes to the network topology.

With this command, you enable the spanning tree function.

Requirement

- The ring redundancy is disabled.
- You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree
```

Result

The spanning tree function is enabled.

If you enable Spanning Tree, passive listening is disabled.

Further notes

The default setting of the function with PROFINET variants is "disabled".

The default setting of the function with EtherNet/IP variants is "enabled".

You disable the ring redundancy function with the `no ring-redundancy` command.

You disable the spanning tree function with the `no spanning-tree` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree detail`command.

You can display information about active ports with the `show spanning-tree active` command.

7.3.4.2 no spanning-tree

Description

With this command, you disable the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree
```

Result

The spanning tree function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the spanning tree function with the `spanning-tree` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree detail`command.

You can display information about active ports with the `show spanning-tree active` command.

7.3.4.3 spanning-tree compatibility

Description

With this command, you configure the compatibility version of the protocol that will be used by the spanning tree function.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree compatibility {stp|rst|mst}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`stp`	The version is compatible with the Spanning Tree protocol	-
`rst`	The version is compatible with the Rapic Spanning Tree protocol	Default: enabled
`mst`	The version is compatible with the Multiple Spanning Tree protocol	-

Result

The compatibility version of the protocol is selected.

Further notes

With the `no spanning-tree compatibility` command, you can reset the setting to the default value `rst`.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning tree detail` command.

You can display information about active ports with the `show spanning tree active` command.

7.3.4.4 no spanning-tree compatibility

Description

With this command, you reset the compatibility version of the protocol of the spanning tree function to the default value.

The default value is RST.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree compatibility
```

Result

The compatibility version is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `spanning-tree compatibility` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning tree detail` command.

7.3.4.5 spanning-tree mst configuration

Description

With this command, you change to the MSTP configuration mode.

Requirement

- MSTP is enabled
- Compatibility mode: MSTP

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree mst configuration
```

Result

You are now in the MSTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-mst)#
```

Further notes

You exit the MSTP configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command.

7.3.4.6 spanning-tree mst instance-id root

Description

With this command you specify whether the device is a root bridge (primary) or a substitute root bridge (secondary).

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree mst{instance-id<instance-id(1-64)>}root{primary|
secondary}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`instance-id`	Keyword for the instance	-
`instance-id`	Number of the instance	1 ... 64

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`primary`	The priority of the device is set to a low value so that the device can become the root bridge (primary) of the Spanning Tree instance. The lower the value, the higher the priority.	The priority is set to the value 24576.
`secondary`	The priority of the device is set to a low value so that the device becomes the substitute root bridge (secondary) of the Spanning Tree instance. If the root bridge (primary) fails, the substitute root bridge (secondary) takes over the task of the root bridge without delay.	The priority is set to the value 28672.

Result

The function of the device is specified.

Additional notes

You disable the root bridge with the `no spanning-tree mst instance-id root` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning-tree ...`.

7.3.4.7 no spanning-tree mst instance-id root

Description

With this command, you disable the "root bridge" function on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no spanning-tree mst{instance-id<instance-id(1-64)>}root
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`instance-id`	Keyword for the instance	-
`instance-id`	Number of the instance	1 ... 64

Result

The "root bridge" function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the root bridge function with the `spanning-tree mst instance-id root` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ...`.

7.3.4.8 spanning-tree mst max-hops

Description

With this command, you configure the maximum number of nodes (hops) that a path can run through in an MST.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree mst max-hops <value(6-40)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`value`	Maximum number of hops that a path can run through in an MST	6 ... 40 Default: 20

Result

The setting for the maximum number of hops is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting for the maximum number of nodes to the default with the `no spanning-tree mst max-hops` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning-tree mst` command.

7.3.4.9 no spanning-tree mst max-hops

Description

With this command, you reset the maximum number of hops that a path in an MST can run through to the default value.

The default value is 20.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree mst max-hops
```

Result

The setting for the maximum number of nodes is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You can configure the setting for the maximum number of nodes with the `spanning-tree mst max-hops` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning-tree mst` command.

7.3.4.10 spanning-tree priority

Description

With this command, you configure the priority of the device. Which device becomes the root bridge is decided based on the priority. The bridge with the highest priority becomes the root bridge. The lower the value, the higher the priority.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree[mst <instance-id(1-64)>] priority <value(0-61440)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mst`	Keyword for a Multiple Spanning Tree instance	-
`instance-id`	Number of the instance	1 ... 64
`priority`	Keyword for the priority	-
`value`	Value for the priority	0 ... 61440 Default: 32768

You can only change the value for the priority in the steps of 4096.

Result

The priority of the device is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no spanning-tree priority` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning-tree ...`.

7.3.4.11 no spanning-tree priority

Description

With this command, you reset the priority of the device back to the default value.

The default value is 32768.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no spanning-tree[mst <instance-id(1-64)>]priority
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mst`	Keyword for a Multiple Spanning Tree instance	-
`instance-id`	Number of the instance	1 ... 64

Result

The priority of the device is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `spanning-tree priority` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning-tree ...`.

7.3.4.12 spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility

Description

With this command you enable the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function.

If you enable the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function, the IE switch sends topology change frames via the (R)STP edge port that caused the topology change.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility
```

Result

The "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility` command.

You can display the status of this function with the `show spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility`command.

7.3.4.13 no spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility

Description

With this command you disable the "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility
```

Result

The "Enhanced Passive Listening Compatibility" function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility` command.

You can display the status of this function with the `show spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility`command.

7.3.4.14 spanning-tree rstp-plus

Description

With this command, you enable RSTP+.

RSTP+ enables the linking of a network segment in which Spanning Tree is activated with an MRP ring. Make sure that the following requirements have been met before executing this command:

- MRP must be activated as redundancy method.
- If ring redundancy is activated, you need to disable the ring ports for Spanning Tree.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree rstp-plus
```

Result

RSTP+ is enabled.

Additional notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree` command.

7.3.4.15 no spanning-tree rstp-plus

Description

With this command, you disable RSTP+.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree rstp-plus
```

Result

RSTP+ is disabled.

Additional notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree` command.

7.3.4.16 spanning-tree rstp-plus mrp-intercon-domain-id

Description

With this command, you configure the MRP Interconnection Domain ID for RSTP+.

The RSTP+ MRP Interconnection Domain ID must be unique throughout the network and must differ from any MRP Interconnection Domain ID that may need to be configured. Different IDs are necessary to distinguish TCNs (Topology Change Notifications) of the RSTP network from TCNs of the MRP ring. This assignment makes it possible to only delete those FDB entries (Forwarding Database entries) that are affected by the topology change.

Each device checks whether different values were configured for these two parameters. If the IDs are identical, the device outputs an error message. The network administrator is responsible for making sure that these IDs are also unique throughout the network. An individual device cannot make such a check.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree rstp-plus mrp-intercon-domain-id <mrp-intercon-domain-id (1-65535)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`mrp-intercon-domain-id`	The MRP Interconnection Domain ID for RSTP+. This value must not match the MRP Interconnection Domain ID configured for the active MRP Interconnection connection.	1 ... 65535

Result

The MRP Interconnection Domain ID for RSTP+ is configured.

Additional notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree detail` command.

You can display information about active ports with the `show spanning-tree active` command.

7.3.4.17 Time settings for the Spanning Tree protocol

spanning-tree (time settings)

Description

With this command, you configure the various time settings of the spanning tree function:

- With the `forward-time` option, you configure the time after which a port changes its spanning tree status from "Blocking" to "Forwarding".
- With the `hello-time` option, you configure the time after which the bridge sends its configuration frames (BPDUs).
- With the `max-age` option, you configure the time after which the information of the BPDUs becomes invalid.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree{forward-time<seconds(4-30)>|hello-time<seconds(1-2)>|
                    max-age<seconds(6-40)>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`forward-time`	Keyword for the time after which a port changes its spanning tree status from "Blocking" to "Forwarding"	-
`seconds`	Time after which the changeover takes place	4 ... 30 Default: 15
`hello-time`	Keyword for the time after which the bridge sends its configuration BPDUs	-
`seconds`	Time after which they are sent	1 ... 2 Default: 2
`max-age`	Keyword for the time after which the information of the BPDUs becomes invalid	-
`seconds`	Maximum age of the BPDUs in seconds	6 ... 40 Default: 20

Note

Dependencies when setting the timing

If you specify the time settings for spanning tree, you need to keep to the following two rules:

- 2 * (`forward-time` - 1) ≥ `max-age`
- `max-age` ≥ 2 * (`hello-time` + 1)

Result

The selected setting for the time is configured.

Further notes

You reset the time settings to the default values with the `no spanning-tree forward-time`, `no spanning-tree hello-time` or `no spanning-tree max-age`.

If you call the `no spanning-tree` command without parameters, you disable the spanning tree function. The configured time settings are retained.

If you call the `restart factory` command, the system restarts with the factory configuration settings All rime settings are reset.

You display these settings and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning-tree ...`.

no spanning-tree (time settings)

Description

With this command in conjunction with the relevant parameter you reset the time settings of the spanning tree function to the default values.

If you call the command without parameters, you disable the spanning tree function. The configured time settings are retained.

If you call the `restart factory` command, the system restarts with the factory configuration settings All rime settings are reset.

The default values are as follows:

Parameter	Default value
`forward-time`	15 seconds
`hello-time`	2 seconds
`max-age`	20 seconds

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no spanning-tree{forward-time|hello-time|max-age}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`forward-time`	Time after which a port changes its spanning tree status from "Blocking" to "Forwarding"
`hello-time`	Time after which the bridge sends its configuration frames (BPDUs)
`max-age`	Time after which the information of the BPDUs becomes invalid

Result

The selected setting for the time is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the time with the `spanning-tree` command (time settings).

You display these settings and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning-tree ...`.

7.3.5 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.3.5.1 spanning-tree

Description

With this command, you configure the various properties of the spanning tree function:

- With the `cost` option, you configure the port costs used to calculate the lowest-cost path.
- With the `disable` option, you disable the interface for the spanning tree function.
- With the `link-type` option, you configure the connection status of the following network segment. The following settings are possible:
  - `point-to-point` – the interface communicates with precisely one network component
  - `shared` - the interface is connected to more than one network component
- With the `portfast` option, you enable the PortFast function on the interface. The interface is connected to an end device and can therefore ignore the waiting time before changing to Forwarding mode.
- With the `port-priority` option, you configure the priority of the interface for negotiating a spanning tree configuration.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree {cost <0-200000000>|disable|
               link-type{point-to-point|shared}|portfast|
               port-priority<0-240>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`cost`	Keyword Describes the costs of the port for calculating the lowest cost path.	0 ... 200000000 Default: if dynamic calculation of the path costs is not enabled: • 200000 for physical interfaces • 199999 for port channels
`disable`	disables the interface for spanning tree	- Default: The spanning tree function is enabled on the interface

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`link-type`	Connection status of the following network segment	• `point-to-point` • `shared` Default: • `point-to-point` The connection is configured as `full-duplex` • `shared` in all other cases
`portfast`	Enables the PortFast function	- Default: disabled
`port-priority`	Priority of the interface	0 ... 240 in increments of 16 Default: 128

Note

Configure multiple properties

With each call of the command, you can configure precisely one property.
If you want to configure several properties, call the command several times.

Result

The selected property is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no spanning-tree` (properties) command.

You display these settings and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning-tree ...`.

7.3.5.2 no spanning-tree

Description

With this command, you reset the various properties of the spanning tree function to the default value:

The default values are as follows:

Parameter	Default value
`cost`	if dynamic calculation of the path costs is not enabled: • 200000 for physical interfaces • 199999 for port channels
`disable`	The spanning tree function is enabled on the interface

Parameter	Default value
link-type	• point-to-point The connection is configured as full-duplex • shared in all other cases
portfast	disabled
port-priority	128

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no spanning-tree {cost|disable|link-type|portfast|port-priority}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
cost	Keyword for the costs of the port for calculating the lowest-cost path.
disable	Enables the interface for spanning tree.
link-type	Connection status of the following network segment
portfast	Disables the PortFast function.
port-priority	Keyword for the priority of the interface

Note

Configure multiple properties

With each call of the command, you can configure precisely one property.
If you want to configure several properties, call the command several times.

Result

The selected setting was reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `spanning-tree` command (properties).

You display these settings and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning-tree ...`.

7.3.5.3 spanning-tree auto-edge

Description

With this command, you enable automatic discovery of a bridge connected to the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree auto-edge
```

Result

The automatic discovery of a bridge on the interface is enabled.

Further notes

The automatic discovery of a bridge on the interface is disabled with the `no spanning-tree auto-edge` command.

7.3.5.4 no spanning-tree auto-edge

Description

With this command, you disable automatic discovery of a bridge connected to the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree auto-edge
```

Result

The automatic discovery of a bridge on the interface is disabled.

Further notes

The automatic discovery of a bridge on the interface is enabled with the `spanning-tree auto-edge` command.

7.3.5.5 spanning-tree bpdu-transmit

Description

With this command, you enable or disable the BPDU transmit status at the port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree bpdu-transmit{enabled|disabled}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`enabled`	BPDU packets are transmitted at the port	Default: enabled
`disabled`	BPDU packets are not transmitted at the port	-

Result

The BPDU transmit status has switched over.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree interface` command with the `detail` option.

7.3.5.6 spanning-tree bpdu-receive

Description

With this command, you enable or disable the BPDU receive status at the port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree bpdu-receive{enabled|disabled}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`enabled`	BPDU packets are received at the port	Default: enabled
`disabled`	BPDU packets are ignored at the port	-

Result

The BPDU receive status is enabled or disabled.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree interface` command with the `detail` option.

7.3.5.7 spanning-tree bpdufilter

Description

With this command, you configure the BPDU transmit status for a port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree bpdufilter{disable|enable}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`disable`	The transfer of BPDU packets is disabled for the port	Default: disabled
`enable`	The transfer of BPDU packets is enabled for the port	-

Result

The BPDU transmit status is configured.

7.3.5.8 spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port

Description

With this command, you configure a port as a layer 2 gateway port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port
```

Result

The port is configured as a layer 2 gateway port.

Further notes

You delete the configuration of a port as a layer 2 gateway port with the command`no spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port`.

You can display other information with the `show spanning-tree interface` command with the `detail` option.

7.3.5.9 no spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port

Description

With this command, you delete the configuration of the port as a layer 2 gateway port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port
```

Result

The configuration of the port as a layer 2 gateway port is deleted.

Further notes

You configure a port as a layer 2 gateway port with the command `spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port`.

You can display other information with the `show spanning-tree interface` command with the `detail` option.

7.3.5.10 spanning-tree loop-guard

Description

This function prevents alternative ports or root ports becoming designated ports if there is a disruption of a one-way link.

With this command, you enable the function.

Requirement

- Spanning tree is enabled.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree loop-guard
```

Result

The "Spanning Tree Loop Guard" function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no spanning-tree loop-guard` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the following commands:

- `show spanning-tree detail`
- `show spanning-tree active detail`
- `show spanning-tree interface`

7.3.5.11 no spanning-tree loop-guard

Description

This function prevents alternative ports or root ports becoming designated ports if there is a disruption of a one-way link.

With this command, you disable the function.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree loop-guard
```

Result

The "Spanning Tree Loop Guard" function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the setting with the `spanning-tree loop-guard` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the following commands:

- `show spanning-tree detail`
- `show spanning-tree active detail`
- `show spanning-tree interface`

7.3.5.12 spanning-tree mst

Description

With this command, you configure the various properties of the Multiple Spanning Tree function:

- With the `cost` option, you configure the port costs used to calculate the lowest-cost path.
- With the `port-priority` option, you configure the priority of the interface for negotiating a Multiple Spanning Tree configuration.
- With the `disable` option, you disable the interface for the Multiple Spanning Tree function.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree mst<instance-id(1-64)>
      {cost(0-200000000)|port-priority (0-240)|disable}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`instance-id`	Number of the addressed instance	1 ... 64
`cost`	Costs of the port for calculating the lowest cost path.	0 ... 200000000 Default: • 200000 for physical interfaces • 199999 for port channels
`port-priority`	Priority of the interface	0 ... 240 in steps of 16 Default: 128
`disable`	Disables the interface for multiple spanning tree	Default: MST is disabled, RST is enabled

Note

Configure multiple properties

With each call of the command, you can configure precisely one property.
If you want to configure several properties, call the command several times.

Result

The selected property is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no spanning-tree mst` (properties) command.

You display these settings and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ...`.

7.3.5.13 no spanning-tree mst

Description

With this command, you reset the various properties of the Multiple Spanning Tree function to the default value.

The default values are as follows:

Parameter	Default value
`cost`	• 200000 for physical interfaces • 199999 for port channels
`port-priority`	128
`disable`	MST is disabled, RST is enabled

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no spanning-tree mst<instance-id(1-64)>{cost|port-priority|disable}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`instance-id`	Number of the addressed instance	1 ... 64
`cost`	Keyword for the costs of the port for calculating the lowest-cost path.	-
`port-priority`	Keyword for the priority of the interface	-
`disable`	Enables the interface for multiple spanning tree.	-

Note

Configure multiple properties

With each call of the command, you can configure precisely one property.
If you want to configure several properties, call the command several times.

Result

The selected setting is reset to the default value.

Additional notes

You configure the setting with the `spanning-tree mst` command (properties).

You display these settings and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ...`.

7.3.5.14 spanning-tree mst hello-time

Description

With this command, you configure the Hello time after which the bridge sends its configuration frames (BPDUs).

A change to this value applies to all MST instances active on this interface.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree mst hello-time <seconds(1-2)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`seconds`	Time after which the bridge sends its configuration frames (BPDUs)	1 ... 2 Default: 2

Result

The setting for the hello time is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting for the hello time to the default with the `no spanning-tree mst hello-time` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning-tree ...`.

7.3.5.15 no spanning-tree mst hello-time

Description

With this command, you reset the hello time after which the bridge sends its configuration BPDUs to the default value.

The default value is 2 seconds.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree mst hello-time
```

Result

The setting for the hello time is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You can configure the setting for the hello time with the `spanning-tree mst hello-time` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning-tree ...`.

7.3.5.16 spanning-tree mst PseudoRootId

Description

With this command, you configure a pseudoroot MAC address and the priority for a spanning tree configuration. The command is used in conjunction with the layer 2 gateway port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
spanning-tree[mst<instance-id>]pseudoRootId
      priority<value(0-61440)>mac-address<ucast_mac>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mst`	Keyword for a spanning tree instance	-
`instance-id`	Number of the instance	1 ... 64
`priority`	Keyword for the priority	-
`value`	Value for the priority	0 ... 61440 Default: Priority of the device
`mac-address`	Keyword for the pseudoroot unicast MAC address	-
`ucast_mac`	MAC address of the interface	aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa Default: MAC address of the device

You can only change the value for the priority in the steps of 4096.

Result

The pseudoroot MAC address and the priority are configured.

Further notes

You can reset the settings to the default values with the `no spanning-tree mst pseudoRootId`command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ....`

7.3.5.17 no spanning-tree mst PseudoRootId

Description

With this command, you reset a pseudoroot MAC address and the priority of the spanning tree configuration to the default values.

The default values are as follows:

- The priority is configured to the priority of the device.
- The MAC address is configured to the MAC address of the device.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no spanning-tree[mst<instance-id(1-64)>]pseudoRootId
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mst`	Keyword for a spanning tree instance	-
`instance-id`	Number of the instance	1 ... 64

Result

The pseudoroot MAC address and the priority are rest to the defaults.

Further notes

You configure the settings with the `spanning-tree mst pseudoRootId` command.

You display this setting and other information with the commands that start with `show spanning tree ....`

7.3.5.18 spanning-tree restricted-role

Description

With this command, you prevent the port adopting the role of root port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree restricted-role
```

As default the function is "disabled".

Result

The port is prevented from adopting the role of root port.

Further notes

You cancel the lock with the `no spanning-tree restricted-role` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree detail`command.

7.3.5.19 no spanning-tree restricted-role

Description

With this command, you release the port for the role as root port.

Requirement

You are in the interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree restricted-role
```

Result

The port is released for the role of root port.

Further notes

You prevent the port adopting the role of the root port with the `spanning-tree restricted-role` command.

7.3.5.20 spanning-tree restricted-tcn

Description

With this command, you restrict the port for the Topology Change Notification (TCN) function. The port cannot initiate any modifications to the network topology.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree restricted-tcn
```

Result

The port is prevented from using the TCN function.

Further notes

You cancel the lock with the `no spanning-tree restricted-tcn` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree detail`command.

7.3.5.21 no spanning-tree restricted-tcn

Description

With this command, you release the port for the TCN function.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree restricted-tcn
```

Result

The port is released for the TCN function.

Further notes

You restrict the port for the TCN function with the `spanning-tree restricted-tcn` command.

7.3.5.22 spanning-tree limited-tcn

Description

With this command, you specify that the port accepts received and detected topology changes but does not forward them to other ports. This command only takes effect when the following requirements are met:

- RSTP+ must be enabled.
- The port cannot be blocked for Topology Change Notifications. You release a port blocked for TCN with the command `no spanning-tree restricted-tcn`.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
spanning-tree limited-tcn
```

Result

The port accepts topology changes but does not forward them to other ports.

Additional notes

You cancel the block with the `no spanning-tree limited-tcn` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree detail` command.

7.3.5.23 no spanning-tree limited-tcn

Description

With this command, you specify that the port accepts received and detected topology changes and forwards them to other ports.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no spanning-tree limited-tcn
```

Result

The port forwards TCN to other ports.

Additional notes

You block the forwarding of Topology Change Notifications with the command `spanning-tree limited-tcn`. However, the port accepts received and detected topology changes.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show spanning-tree detail` command.

7.3.6 Commands in the MSTP configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the MSTP configuration mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `spanning-tree mst configuration` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the MSTP configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the MSTP configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in MSTP configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.3.6.1 instance

Description

With this command, you assign a range of VLANs to an MST instance.

Requirement

You are in the MSTP configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-mst)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
instance <instance-id(1-64)> vlan <vlan-range>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`instance-id`	Number of the instance	1 ... 64 You can define up to 16 MSTP instances. Default: The VLANs 1 ... 4094 are assigned to instance "0"
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Range of VLANs assigned to an instance	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen without a space.

Result

The range of VLANs is assigned to the MST instance.

Further notes

You cancel the assignment of the VLAN to an MST instance with the `no instance` command.

You delete the MST instance with the `no instance` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning-tree mst configuration` command.

7.3.6.2 no instance

Description

With this command, you cancel the assignment of a VLAN to an MST instance or delete the MST instance.

Requirement

You are in the MSTP Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-mst)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no instance <instance-id (1-64)> [vlan <vlan-range>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`instance-id`	Number of the MST instance	1 ... 64
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Range of VLANs that will be deleted from the instance	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen or a space.

If you specify a VLAN or a VLAN range, the assignment to an MST instance is canceled.

If you do not specify a VLAN, the MST instance is deleted.

Result

The assignment of a VLAN to an MST instance is canceled or the MST instance is deleted.

Further notes

You assign a VLAN to an MST instance with the `instance` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning-tree mst configuration` command.

7.3.6.3 name

Description

With this command, you configure a name for the MST region.

Requirement

You are in the MSTP Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-mst)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
name <region-name>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`region-name`	Name of the MST region	Max. 32 characters

The default value of the name is the MAC address of the device.

Result

The name is configured.

Further notes

You delete the name of the MST region with the `no name` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning-tree mst configuration` command.

7.3.6.4 no name

Description

With this command, you reset the name for the MST region to the default value.

The default value is:

- The MAC address of the device is configured as name.

Requirement

You are in the MSTP Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-mst)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no name
```

Result

The name is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the name of the MST region with the `name` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning-tree mst configuration` command.

7.3.6.5 revision

Description

With this command, you assign a revision number to the MST region.

Requirement

You are in the MSTP Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-mst)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
revision <revision-no(0-65535)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`revision-no`	Value of the revision number	0 ... 65535 Default: 0

Result

The MST region is assigned a revision number.

Further notes

You delete a revision number with the `no revision` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning-tree mst configuration` command.

7.3.6.6 no revision

Description

With this command, you reset the revision number of the MST region to the default value.

The default value is 0.

Requirement

You are in the MSTP Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-mst)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no revision
```

Result

The revision number of the MST region is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You assign a revision number to the MST region with the `revision` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show spanning-tree mst configuration` command.

7.4 Passive Listening

This section describes commands of the passive listening function.

If you enable passive listening, the IE switch forwards (R)STP configuration frames (BPDUs) transparently even when (R)STP is disabled for it. The IE switch also reacts to topology change frames. When the IE switch receives a TC frame, it deletes the MAC address table.

7.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.4.1.1 show passive-listening

Description

This command shows whether or not "passive listening" is enabled.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show passive-listening
```

Result

`disabled` is displayed if "passive listening" is disabled. If "passive listening" is enabled, `enabled` is displayed.

7.4.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

7.4.2.1 passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood

Description

With this command you enable forwarding of BPDUs for specific VLANs; in other words to all ports that are members of a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood
```

As default the function is "enabled".

Result

BPDUs for specific VLANs.

Further notes

You disable this function with the `no passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood` command.

You display the status of "passive listening" with the `show passive-listening` command.

7.4.2.2 no passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood

Description

With this command you enable the flooding of BPDUs to all available ports of the device regardless of the configured VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood
```

Result

BPDUs are flooded to all available ports.

Further notes

You enable this function with the `passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood` command.

You display the status of "passive listening" with the `show passive-listening` command.

7.4.2.3 passive-listening

Description

This command enables "passive listening".

Requirement

Note

No simultaneous operation with spanning tree

"Passive listening" can only be enabled when spanning tree is disabled.

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
passive-listening
```

Result

The "passive listening" function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable "passive listening" with the `no passive-listening` command.

You display the status of "passive listening" with the `show passive-listening` command.

7.4.2.4 no passive-listening

Description

This command disables "passive listening".

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no passive-listening
```

Result

The "passive listening" function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable "passive listening" with the `passive-listening` command.

You display the status of "passive listening" with the `show passive-listening` command.

Network protocols

8

This part contains the sections that describe the commands for working with the various network protocols.

8.1 IPv4 protocol

This section describes commands of the Internet Protocol (IP) version 4.

8.1.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.1.1.1 show ip gateway

Description

This command shows the default gateway configured for the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ip gateway
```

Result

The default gateway is displayed.

8.1.1.2 show ip telnet

Description

This command shows the admin status and the port number of the Telnet server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ip telnet
```

Result

The admin status and the port number of the Telnet server are displayed.

8.1.1.3 show dcp server

Description

This command shows whether or not the DCP function is enabled on the device.

If the DCP function is enabled, the read and write permissions are displayed.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show dcp server
```

Result

The overview of the status of the DCP function and access rights is displayed.

8.1.1.4 show dcp forwarding

Description

This command shows an overview of the DCP forwarding behavior on one or all interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dcp forwarding [port <interface-type> <interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The overview of the DCP forwarding behavior is displayed.

8.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.1.2.1 ip gateway

Description

With this command, you configure the default gateway.

Note

If you configure a static IP address for the default gateway, DHCP is automatically disabled for the TIA interface. This prevents the gateway address from being overwritten by DHCP. If necessary, you can enable DHCP again subsequently.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip gateway <gateway>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
`gateway`	Specifies the IP address of the gateway	enter a valid IP address

Result

The entry is configured.

Additional notes

You delete the default gateway with the `no ip gateway` command.

You show the default gateway with the `show ip gateway` command.

8.1.2.2 no ip gateway

Description

With this command, you delete the default gateway.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip gateway <gateway>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
`gateway`	Specifies the IP address of the gateway.	Specify a valid IP address.

Result

The entry is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the default gateway with the `ip gateway` command.

You show the default gateway with the `show ip gateway` command.

8.1.2.3 ip echo-reply

Description

To check the availability of a network node, packets of the Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) can be sent to it. These packets of type 8 request the recipient to send a packet back to the sender (echo reply).

With this command you enable the network node to react to ping queries.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip echo-reply
```

Result

"ICMP echo reply messages" are enabled. The network node reacts to ping queries.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no ip echo-reply` command.

8.1.2.4 no ip echo-reply

Description

With this command you stop the network node reacting to ping queries.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip echo-reply
```

Result

"ICMP echo reply messages" are disabled. The network node does not react to ping queries.

Further notes

You change the setting with the `ip echo-reply` command.

8.1.2.5 telnet-server

Description

With this command, you enable the Telnet server.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
telnet-server
```

As default the function is "enabled".

Result

The Telnet server is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the Telnet server with the `no telnet-server` command.

8.1.2.6 no telnet-server

Description

With this command, you disable the Telnet server.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no telnet-server
```

Result

The Telnet server is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the Telnet server with the `telnet-server` command.

8.1.2.7 telnet-server port

Description

With this command you specify the port for Telnet access to the CLI.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
telnet-server port <port-number(49500-65535)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port-number`	Port number	49500 ... 65535 Default: 23 (standard port)

Result

The port for Telnet access has been changed. Access the CLI with the changed port.

Additional notes

You reset the port to the standard port with the `no telnet-server port` command.

8.1.2.8 no telnet-server port

Description

With this command, you reset the port to the standard port.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no telnet-server port
```

Result

The port is reset to the standard port 23.

Additional notes

You configure the port for Telnet access with the `telnet-server port.` command

8.1.2.9 dcp server

Description

With this command, you configure the read and write permissions for the DCP server and enable it.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dcp server {read-only|read-write}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`read-only`	only reading is permitted on the DCP server	-
`read-write`	reading and writing is permitted on the DPC server	Default: `read-write`

Result

The read and write permissions for the DPC server are configured.

The DCP server is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the DCP server with the `no dcp server` command.

8.1.2.10 no dcp server

Description

With this command, you disable the DCP server.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dcp server
```

Result

The DCP server is disabled.

Further notes

You enable and configure the DCP server with the `dcp server` command.

8.1.3 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.1.3.1 dcp forwarding

Description

With this command, you configure the forwarding behavior of the interface for DCP frames.

Note
PROFINET configuration

Since DCP is a PROFINET protocol, the configuration created here is only effective with the VLAN associated with the TIA interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dcp forwarding {block|forward}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`block`	DCP frames are discarded	-
`forward`	DCP frames are forwarded	Default: `forward`

Result

The forwarding behavior of the interface for DCP frames is configured.

8.1.3.2 ip address

Description

With this command, you assign an IP address.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip address <ip-address> {<subnet-mask>| / <prefix-length(0-32)>}
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
ip-address	IP address	Specify a valid IP address.
subnet-mask	Subnet mask	Enter a valid subnet mask.
prefix-length	Decimal representation of the mask as a number of "1" bits	0 ... 32

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The IP address is assigned.

Note

Effectiveness of the command

The command is effective immediately. If you configure the interface via which you access the device, the connection will be lost!

Further notes

You delete the setting with the `no ip address` command.

8.1.3.3 no ip address

Description

With this command, you delete the assignment of an IP address and disable DHCP.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip address [{ <ucast_addr> | dhcp }]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ucast-addr`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`dhcp`	Specify this parameter if you want to disable the DHCP function explicitly.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

If DHCP was enabled on this interface, DHCP is now disabled. Any existing dynamically learned IP address will be automatically converted to a static IP address.

If static IP addresses were configured and if no explicit IP address was transferred as a parameter, all static IP addresses will be deleted from this interface.

If a static IP address was specified explicitly, this address is deleted from this interface.

Note

Effectiveness of the command

The command is effective immediately.

If you configure the interface via which you access the device, you can lose the connection!

Further notes

You assign an IP address with the `ip address` or `ip address dhcp` command.

8.1.3.4 ip address dhcp

Description

With this command, the VLAN interface obtains the IPv4 address via DHCP.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip address dhcp
```

Result

The DHCP assigns the IP address to the VLAN interface.

Further notes

You delete the settings with the `no ip address` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show ip interface` command.

8.2 DHCP client

This section describes commands of the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).

8.2.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.2.1.1 show ip dhcp client stats

Description

With this command, you display the statistical counters of the DHCP client.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ip dhcp client stats
```

Result

The counters are displayed.

8.2.1.2 show ip dhcp client

Description

With this command, you display the configuration settings of the DHCP client.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ip dhcp client
```

Result

The configuration settings of the DHCP client are displayed.

8.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.2.2.1 ip dhcp config-file-request

Description

If the DHCP config file request option is set, the device requests the TFTP address and the name of a configuration file from the DHCP server. If the device is restarted following the completed download, the configuration settings are read from this file.

With this command, you enable the DHCP config file request option.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip dhcp config-file-request
```

Result

The DHCP config file request option is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the DHCP config file request option with the `no ip dhcp config-file-request` command.

8.2.2.2 no ip dhcp config-file-request

Description

With this command, you disable the DHCP config file request option.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip dhcp config-file-request
```

Result

The DHCP config file request option is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the DHCP config file request option with the `ip dhcp config-file-request` command.

8.2.2.3 ip dhcp client mode

Description

With this command, you configure the type of identifier with which the DHCP client logs on with its DHCP server.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip dhcp client mode {mac | client-id <client-id> | sysname  |pnio-name-of-station}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`mac`	Keyword for logon with the MAC address.	-
`client-id`	Keyword for logon with the Client ID.	-
`client-id`	The ID of the DHCP client.	Max. 254 characters
`sysname`	Keyword for logon with the system name.	-
`pnio-name-of-station`	Keyword for logon with the PROFINET name. The name is assigned with the PST tool.	-

Result

The registration mode of the DHCP client is configured.

8.2.3 Commands in the Interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.2.3.1 ip address dhcp

Description

With this command, you assign an IP address using DHCP.

Requirement

You are in the VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
ip address dhcp
```

Result

The IP address is assigned using DHCP.

Further notes

You delete the setting with the `no ip address` command.

8.2.3.2 no ip address

Description

With this command, you delete the assignment of an IP address and disable DHCP.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip address [{ <ucast_addr> | dhcp }]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ucast-addr`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`dhcp`	Specify this parameter if you want to disable the DHCP function explicitly.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

If DHCP was enabled on this interface, DHCP is now disabled. Any existing dynamically learned IP address will be automatically converted to a static IP address.

If static IP addresses were configured and if no explicit IP address was transferred as a parameter, all static IP addresses will be deleted from this interface.

If a static IP address was specified explicitly, this address is deleted from this interface.

Note

Effectiveness of the command

The command is effective immediately.

If you configure the interface via which you access the device, you can lose the connection!

Further notes

You assign an IP address with the `ip address` or `ip address dhcp` command.

8.3 DHCP server

You can operate the device as a DHCP server. This allows IP addresses to be assigned automatically to the connected devices. The IP addresses are either distributed dynamically from an address band (pool) you have specified or a specific IP address is assigned to a particular device.

Both with the dynamic and static assignment a pool is selected based on the following criteria:

1. With the DHCP query option 82 is enabled.
   The DHCP server checks whether there is a pool with option 82. You configure this criterion with the `relay-information` command.
2. The DHCP query was received via a relay agent.
   The DHCP server checks whether the relay agent is located in the subnet of a pool.
3. The port via which the DHCP query was received is enabled in the Port Range.
   The DHCP server checks whether the IP interface of the port is located in the subnet of a pool. You configure this criterion with the `ip address` command.

This section describes commands relevant for configuring the DHCP server.

Requirement

The connected devices are configured so that they obtain the IPv4 address from a DHCP server.

8.3.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.3.1.1 show ip dhcp-server bindings

Description

This command shows the current assignments of IPv4 addresses of the DHCP server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
show ip dhcp-server bindings
```

Result

The information is displayed.

8.3.1.2 show ip dhcp-server pools

Description

The command shows the DHCP server configuration of a specific IPv4 address band or all IPv4 address bands.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip dhcp-server pools [pool-id (1-24)]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`pool-id`	ID of the addressed IPv4 address band	1 ... 24

If no parameters are specified, the settings for all address bands are displayed.

Result

The configuration of the DHCP server is displayed.

8.3.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.3.2.1 ip dhcp-server

Description

With this command, you enable the DHCP server on the device.

Note

To avoid conflicts with IPv4 addresses, only one device may be configured as a DHCP server in the network.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
ip dhcp-server
```

Result

The DHCP server is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the DHCP server with the `no ip dhcp-server` command.

8.3.2.2 no ip dhcp-server

Description

With this command, you disable the DHCP server on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ip dhcp-server
```

Result

The DHCP server is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the DHCP server with the `ip dhcp-server` command.

8.3.2.3 ip dhcp-server icmp-probe

Description

With this command you enable the function "Probe address with ICMP echo before offer". The DHCP server checks whether or not the IPv4 address has already been assigned. If no reply is received, the DHCP server can assign the IPv4 address.

Note

With static assignments, this check is not made.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
ip dhcp-server icmp-probe
```

Result

The function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no ip dhcp-server icmp-probe` command.

8.3.2.4 no ip dhcp-server icmp-probe

Description

With this command you disable the function "Probe address with ICMP echo before offer".

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ip dhcp-server icmp-probe
```

Result

The function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `ip dhcp-server icmp-probe` command.

8.3.2.5 ip dhcp-server pool

Description

With this command, you have three options of changing to the DHCPPOOL configuration mode and to assign an interface to the IPv4 address band.

1. If you call the command `ip dhcp-server pool` with the parameter `pool-id (1-24)`, you change to the corresponding DHCPPOOL configuration mode. The corresponding pool ID must have already been created.
2. If you call the `ip dhcp-server pool` command with the parameter `vlan` or `interface-type/interface-id`, an IPv4 address band with the next free pool ID is created and the specified interface assigned directly to it. This is followed by a change to the DHCPPOOL configuration mode. You then configure the other settings in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.
3. If you call the `ip dhcp-server pool` command without parameters, and IPv4 address band with the next free pool ID is created and you change directly to the corresponding DHCPPOOL configuration mode.
   You then configure the interface and the other settings in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
ip dhcp-server pool [{ <pool-id (1-24)> | [{ vlan <vlan-id (1-4094)>
| <interface-type> <interface-id> }]}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`pool-id`	ID of the addressed IPv4 address band	1 ... 24
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The ID of the addressed IPv4 address band is configured.

You are now in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Additional notes

You exit the DHCPPOOL configuration mode with the `exit` command.

You delete the entry with the `no ip dhcp-server pool` command.

8.3.2.6 no ip dhcp-server pool

Description

With this command, you delete the required IPv4 address band.

Requirement

- The IPv4 address band is not enabled.
- You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip dhcp-server pool <pool-id (1-24)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`pool-id`	ID of the addressed IPv4 address band	1 ... 24

Result

The required IPv4 address band is deleted.

Further notes

You create an IPv4 address band with the `ip dhcp-server pool`command.

8.3.3 Commands in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the DHCPPOOL Configuration mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `ip dhcp-server pool` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the DHCPPOOL Configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global Configuration mode.
- If you exit the DHCPPOOL Configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.3.3.1 lease-time

Description

With this command, you specify how long the assigned IPv4 address remains valid. When half the period of validity has elapsed. the DHCP client can extend the period of the assigned IPv4 address. When the entire time has elapsed, the DHCP client needs to request a new IPv4 address.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
lease-time <seconds (60-31536000)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`seconds`	Time until renewal of the assigned IPv4 address in seconds	60 ... 31536000

Result

The time is configured.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

8.3.3.2 network

Description

With this command you configure the IPv4 address band from which the DHCP client receives any IPv4 address.

Note

Assignment of IP addresses

When assigning IP addresses from a local address band, the IPv4 address of the interface must be located within the IPv4 address band. If this is not the case, the interface does not assign any IPv4 addresses.

The IP address does not need to be within the IPv4 address band if relay agent information is configured for the address band.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
network <lower-IP> <upper-IP> { <subnet-mask> | / <prefix-length
(1-32)> }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`lower-IP`	Start of the IPv4 address band	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
`upper-IP`	End of the IPv4 address band	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
`subnet-mask`	Subnet mask of the corresponding subnet	Enter a valid subnet mask.
`prefix-length`	Decimal representation of the mask as a number of "1" bits	1 ... 32

Result

The IPv4 address band is configured. The DHCP options 1, 3, 6, 66 and 67 are created automatically. With the exception of option 1, the options can be deleted.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You assign an IP address to an interface with the `set interface` command.

You configure the DHCP option 67 with the `option value-string` command.

You configure the DHCP options 3, 6 and 66 with the `option` command.

You delete the DHCP option with the `no option` command.

8.3.3.3 Option (IP address)

Description

With this command you configure the DHCP options 3 and 6 that contain an IPv4 address as DHCP parameter. The DHCP options 3 and 6 are created automatically when the IPv4 address band is created.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
option <option-code> { <ip-address-list> | int-ip }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`option-code`	Code of the DHCP option	• 3 - Default gateway • 6 - DNS server • 66 - TFTP server
`ip-adress-list`	IPv4 address or IPv4 address list	• DHCP option 3 (default gateway): Enter the DHCP parameter as an IPv4 address, e.g. 192.168.100.2. • DHCP option 6 (name server): Enter the DHCP parameter as an IPv4 address, e.g. 192.168.100.2. You can specify up to three IPv4 addresses separated by commas. • DHCP option 66 (TFTP server) Enter the DHCP parameter as an IPv4 address, e.g. 192.168.100.2.
`int-ip`	Uses IPv4 address of the interface that is assigned to the IPv4 address band.	Only with DHCP option 3

Result

The DHCP option is created.

Additional notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You disable the IPv4 address band with the `no pool-enable` command.

You delete the DHCP option with the `no option` command.

You configure the DHCP options 12, 66 and 67 with the `option value-string` command.

You configure the interface with the `set interface` command.

8.3.3.4 option value-string

Description

With this command you configure DHCP options 12, 66 and 67 that contain a string as DHCP parameter. The DHCP options 66 and 67 are created automatically when the IPv4 address band is created.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
option <option-code> value-string <dhcp-param>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`option-code`	Code of the DHCP option	• 12 (host name) • 15 (domain name) • 43 (vendor-specific information) • 67 (bootfile name)
`dhcp-param`	Parameter value of the DHCP option	Enter the parameter value in String format.

Result

The DHCP option is configured.

Additional notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You delete the DHCP option with the `no option` command.

You configure the DHCP options 3 and 6 with the `option` (IP address) command.

You disable the IPv4 address band with the `no pool-enable` command.

8.3.3.5 no option

Description

With this command, you delete the DHCP option with the specified number.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#`

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

`no option <option-code>`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`option-code`	Code of the DHCP option	Enter a valid DHCP option code.

Result

The specified DHCP option is deleted.

Additional notes

You configure the DHCP options 3, 6 and 66 with the `option` command.

You configure the DHCP options 12, 15, 43, and 67 with the `option value-string` command.

8.3.3.6 pool-enable

Description

With this command you specify that this IPv4 address band will be used.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
pool-enable
```

Result

The setting is enabled.

Note

If the IPv4 address band is enabled, the following parameters can no longer be edited:

- DHCP options (`option` ...)
- Port Range (`ports`)
- Relay Agent Information (`relay-information`)
- Static Leases (`static-lease`)

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You disable the setting with the `no pool-enable` command.

8.3.3.7 no pool-enable

Description

With this command you specify that this IPv4 address band will not be used.

Note

Deleting DHCP server bindings

If you disable or delete an IPv4 address band or you switch the DHCP server off and on again, the DHCP server bindings are deleted. You display the DHCP server bindings with the `show ip dhcp-server bindings` command.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no pool-enable
```

Result

The setting is disabled.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You enable the setting with the `pool-enable` command.

8.3.3.8 ports

Description

With this command you enable the ports via which the IPv4 addresses of an address band in the local subnet are assigned.

After you have created an IPv4 address band, all ports are selected that are currently located in the corresponding VLAN. If you add ports to the VLAN later, these ports are not automatically enabled.

With address assignments via a relay agent, you cannot restrict the ports.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ports [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c, ...>] [<interface-type> <0/a-b,
0/c, ...>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`0/a-b,0/c,...`	Port no. of the interface	

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The selected ports will be enabled. Before the IPv4 address band can be used, it still needs to be activated.

Further notes

You disable the ports with the `no ports` command.

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You enable the IPv4 address band with the `pool-enable` command.

8.3.3.9 no ports

Description

With this command you disable the ports via which the IPv4 addresses of an address band in the local subnet are assigned.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
no ports [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c, ...>] [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c, ...>] [all]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`0/a-b,0/c,...`	Port no. of the interface	
`all`	All ports will be disabled.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The selected ports will be disabled.

Additional notes

You enable the ports with the `ports` command.

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You enable the IPv4 address band with the `pool-enable` command.

8.3.3.10 relay-information

Description

With this command you define that devices with a certain remote ID and circuit ID are assigned the IPv4 addresses from a specific address band.

If you create such an entry for an address band, address pool only reacts to DHCP queries via a DHCP relay agent (option 82). You can create further address bands for the same IP interfaces so that the pools react to different requests.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
relay-information <remote-id> <circuit-id>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`remote-id`	Remote ID of the device	Enter the remote ID of the device.
`circuit-id`	Circuit ID of the device.	Enter the circuit ID of the device.

Result

Devices with a certain remote ID and circuit ID are assigned the IPv4 addresses from a specific address band. Before the IPv4 address band can be used, it still needs to be activated.

Further notes

You cancel the assignment with the `no relay-information` command.

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

You enable the IPv4 address band with the `pool-enable` command.

8.3.3.11 no relay-information

Description

With this command you cancel the assignment of devices with a certain remote ID and circuit ID to IPv4 addresses from a specific address band.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no relay-information <remote-id> <circuit-id>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`remote-id`	Remote ID of the device	Enter the remote ID of the device.
`circuit-id`	Circuit ID of the device.	Enter the circuit ID of the device.

Result

The assignment is canceled.

Further notes

With the `relay-information` command, you assign devices with a certain remote ID and circuit IPv4 addresses from a specific address band.

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

You enable the IPv4 address band with the `pool-enable` command.

8.3.3.12 set-interface

Description

With this command, you specify the interface via which the IPv4 addresses are dynamically assigned.

Note

Assignment of IP addresses

When assigning IP addresses from a local address band, the IPv4 address of the interface must be located within the IPv4 address band. If this is not the case, the interface does not assign any IPv4 addresses.

The IP address does not need to be within the IPv4 address band if relay agent information is configured for the address band.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
set-interface {vlan <vlan-id (1-4094)> | <interface-type> <interface-id> }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The interface is assigned. Before the IPv4 address band can be used, it still needs to be activated.

Additional notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You enable the IPv4 address band with the `pool-enable` command.

8.3.3.13 static-lease

Description

With this command you specify that devices with a certain MAC address or client ID are assigned to the preset IPv4 address.

Requirement

- The assignment has not yet been created.
- You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
static-lease {mac <mac-address> | client-id <string>} <ip-address>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mac`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`mac-address`	Unicast MAC address	Specify the MAC address. aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff
`client-id`	Keyword for a DHCP client ID	-

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`string`	Freely definable DHCP client ID	Enter the required designation. Maximum of 254 characters
`ip-address`	Unicast IPv4 address	Enter a valid IPv4 address. The IPv4 address must match the subnet of the IPv4 address band.

Result

The assignment is specified.

Further notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp dhcp-server bindings` command.

You disable the IPv4 address band with the `no pool-enable` command.

You delete the assignment with the `no static-lease` command.

8.3.3.14 no static-lease

Description

With this command, you delete the assignment of an IPv4 address to a MAC address.

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no static-lease { mac <mac-address> | client-id <string> }
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mac`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`mac-address`	Unicast MAC address	Specify the MAC address. aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`client-id`	Keyword for a DHCP client ID	-
`string`	Freely definable DHCP client ID	Enter the required designation.

Result

The assignment is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the assignment with the `static-lease` command.

8.3.3.15 host

Description

With this command, you configure a DHCP option for a statically assigned IP address.

Note

This command is not available with the following devices:

- SCALANCE XB-200
- SCALANCE XR-300WG

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
host { mac <mac-address> | client-id <string> | client-id-duid
<hex_str> } option <code (1-2147483647)> { value-string <dhcp-param>
| ip <address>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
mac	Keyword for the MAC address.	-
mac-address	The MAC address of the device for which a DHCP option is to be set.	Specify a valid MAC address.
client-id	Keyword for the client ID	-
string	The DHCP client ID	String, maximum of 254 characters
client-id-duid	Keyword for the DUID (DHCP Unique Identifier) of the device for which a DHCP option is to be specified.	-
hex_str	The DHCP Unique Identifier of the device	Depending on the type of the DUID
option	Keyword for the DHCP option	-
code	The number of the DHCP option	1 ... 2147483647
value-string	Keyword for a parameter in string format	-
dhcp-param	Value of the parameter	String
ip	Keyword for an IP address	-
address	The IP address that is used for the DHCP option.	Specify a valid IP address.

Result

The DHCP option is configured.

Additional notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You disable a DHCP option for a static IP address with the `no host` command.

8.3.3.16 no host

Description

With this command, you disable a DHCP option for a statically assigned IP address.

Note

This command is not available with the following devices:

- SCALANCE XB-200
- SCALANCE XR-300WG

Requirement

You are in the DHCPPOOL configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-dhcp-pool-<ID>)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no host { mac <mac-address> | client-id <string> | client-id-duid
<hex_str> } option <code (1-2147483647)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
mac	Keyword for the MAC address	-
mac-address	The MAC address of the device for which a DHCP option is to be specified.	Specify a valid MAC address.
client-id	Keyword for the client ID	-
string	The DHCP client ID	String, maximum of 254 characters
client-id-duid	Keyword for the DUID (DHCP Unique Identifier) of the device for which a DHCP option is to be specified.	-
hex_str	The DHCP Unique Identifier of the device	Depending on the type of the DUID
option	Keyword for the DHCP option	-
code	The number of the DHCP option	1 ... 2147483647

Result

The specified DHCP option is disabled.

Additional notes

You display the setting with the `show ip dhcp-server pools` command.

You configure a DHCP option for a static IP address with the `host` command.

8.4 DHCP Relay

This section describes commands for the DHCP Relay Agent.

8.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.4.1.1 show dhcp server

Description

With this command, you display the IP addresses of the DHCP servers to which the device forwards the frames.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode or in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show dhcp server
```

Result

The IP addresses of the DHCP servers are displayed.

Further notes

With the "`ip dhcp server`" command, you specify the IP addresses.

8.4.1.2 show ip dhcp relay information

Description

This command displays the DHCP relay agent settings for all or for a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode or in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip dhcp relay information [vlan <vlan-id>]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The configuration settings are displayed.

8.4.2 Commands in the Global Configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.4.2.1 ip dhcp server

Description

With this command, you specify the IP addresses of the DHCP servers to which the DHCP relay agent forwards the frames. You can specify up to four IP addresses for the DHCP relay agent.

Requirement

- You are in global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`ip dhcp server <ip address>`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`ip address`	IPv4 address of the DHCP server	Enter a valid IP address

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The IP address is specified.

Additional notes

You remove the IP address with the `no ip dhcp server` command.

You enable the DHCP Relay Agent with the `service dhcp-relay` command.

You display the IP addresses with the `show dhcp server` command.

You display the settings with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

8.4.2.2 no ip dhcp server

Description

With this command, you delete the IP address of the DHCP server.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip dhcp server <ip address>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ip address`	IP address of the DHCP server	Enter the IP address to be deleted.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The IP address is removed.

Further notes

You enable the DHCP Relay Agent with the `service dhcp-relay` command.

You create the IP address with the `ip dhcp server` command.

You display the IP addresses with the `show dhcp server` command.

8.4.2.3 ip dhcp relay circuit-id option

Description

The Circuit ID is a sub option of the "DHCP Relay Information" option. The Circuit ID contains information about the origin of the DHCP packet.

With this command, you specify the information contained in the Circuit ID.

The Circuit ID is encoded in the DHCP packet if the "DHCP relay information" option is enabled.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip dhcp relay circuit-id option [router-index] [vlanid] [recv-port]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`router-index`	The router index is added to the Circuit ID.	Default setting
`vlanid`	The VLAN ID is added to the Circuit ID.	-
`recv-prot`	The Circuit ID is added to the receiving port.	-

Result

The content of the Circuit ID is specified.

Additional notes

You enable the DHCP Relay Information option with the `ip dhcp relay information option` command.

You display the information with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

8.4.2.4 ip dhcp relay information option

Description

With this command, you enable the DHCP option 82. If the option is enabled, prior to forwarding to the DHCP server, information about the origin of the DHCP query is encoded in the packet. If the DHCP server sends a response, the information is removed again before forwarding to the DHCP client.

This information is only encoded in the data packet if the DHCP relay agent is enabled.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode or in the Interface configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#` or `cli(config-if-$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
ip dhcp relay information option
```

Result

The option is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the option with the `no ip dhcp relay information option` command.

You enable the DHCP Relay Agent with the `service dhcp-relay` command.

You configure the content of the information with the `ip dhcp relay circuit-id option` command.

You can display the status of this option and other information with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

8.4.2.5 no ip dhcp relay information option

Description

With this command, you disable the DHCP option 82.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode or in the Interface configuration mode of VLAN.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#` or `cli(config-if-$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ip dhcp relay information option
```

Result

The option is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the option with the `ip dhcp relay information option` command.

You can display the status of this option and other information with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

8.4.2.6 ip dhcp relay common-agent-address

Description

With this command, you enable the use of a common agent address. When the function is enabled, in the DHCP request the relay agent replaces the address of the receiving port with the address of the interface that you define with the `ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface` command or the default value.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
ip dhcp relay common-agent-address
```

Result

The relay agent uses a common agent address in DHCP requests.

Further notes

You disable the use of a common agent address with the `no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address` command.

You define a common agent address with the `ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface` command.

You reset the common agent address to the default value with the `no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface` command.

8.4.2.7 no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address

Description

With this command, you disable the use of a common agent address. When the function is disabled, the relay uses the address of the receiving port in DHCP requests.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address
```

Result

The relay agent uses the address of the receiving port in DHCP requests.

Further notes

You enable the use of a common agent address with the `ip dhcp relay common-agent-address` command.

You define a common agent address with the `ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface` command.

You reset the common agent address to the default value with the `no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface` command.

8.4.2.8 ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface

Description

With this command you define the interface whose IP address the relay agent uses as the source address (giaddr) in DHCP requests.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.
The command prompt is:
`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface { vlan <vlan-id
(1-4094)> | <interface-type> <interface-id> }
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094 Default: vlan1
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface name.
`interface-id`	Slot no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The IP address of the interface is used as a common agent address.

Further notes

You reset the common agent address to the default value with the `no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface` command.

You enable the use of a common agent address with the `ip dhcp relay common-agent-address` command.

You disable the use of a common agent address with the `no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address` command.

8.4.2.9 no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface

Description

With this command you reset the common agent address to the default value.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.
The command prompt is:
`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface
```

Result

The default value for the common agent address is used.

Further notes

You define a common agent address with the `ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface` command.

You enable the use of a common agent address with the `ip dhcp relay common-agent-address` command.

You disable the use of a common agent address with the `no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address` command.

8.4.2.10 service dhcp-relay

Description

With this command, you enable the DHCP relay agent on the device. The DHCP relay agent forwards DHCP queries to DHCP servers located in a different subnet.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
service dhcp-relay
```

Result

The DHCP Relay Agent is activated.

Further notes

You disable the DHCP Relay Agent with the `no service dhcp-relay` command.

You create the IP addresses of the DHCP server with the `ip dhcp server` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip dhcp relay information`command.

8.4.2.11 no service dhcp-relay

Description

This command disables the DHCP relay agent.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no service dhcp-relay
```

Result

The DHCP Relay Agent is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the DHCP Relay Agent with the `service dhcp-relay` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip dhcp relay information`command.

8.4.3 Commands in the Interface Configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface vlan $$$` command to change to this mode. When doing this, you need to replace the `$$$` placeholders with the relevant VLAN ID.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN with the `exit` command, you return to the Interface Configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode of VLAN.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.4.3.1 ip dhcp relay circuit-id

Description

With this command, you assign a Circuit ID to the interface.

Requirement

- The interface is an IP interface.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode of VLAN
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config-if-vlan-$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip dhcp relay circuit-id <circuit-id>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`circuit-id`	Circuit ID	1 ... 188

Result

The Circuit ID is assigned.

Further notes

You remove the Circuit ID with the `no ip dhcp relay circuit-id` command.

You display the IP addresses with the `show dhcp server` command.

You display the settings with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

8.4.3.2 no ip dhcp relay circuit-id

Description

With this command, you remove the Circuit ID.

Requirement

- The interface is an IP interface.
- You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN. The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ip dhcp relay circuit-id
```

Result

The Circuit ID is removed.

Further notes

You configure the Circuit ID with the `ip dhcp relay circuit-id` command.

You display the IP addresses with the `show dhcp server` command.

You display the settings with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

8.4.3.3 ip dhcp relay remote-id

Description

With this command, you specify the device ID.

Requirement

- The interface is an IP interface.
- You are in the Interface Configuration mode of VLAN. The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-vlan-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip dhcp relay remote-id <remote-id name>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`remote-id name`	Device ID	max. 32 characters Default: XYZ

Result

The device ID is specified.

Further notes

You remove the device ID with the `no ip dhcp relay remote-id` command.

You display the IP addresses with the `show dhcp server` command.

You display the settings with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

8.4.3.4 no ip dhcp relay remote-id

Description

With this command, you remove the device identifier.

Requirement

- The interface is an IPv4 interface.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config-if-$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

`no ip dhcp relay remote-id`

Result

The device ID is removed.

Further notes

You configure the device ID with the `ip dhcp relay remote-id` command.

You display the IP addresses with the `show dhcp server` command.

You display the settings with the `show ip dhcp relay information` command.

8.5 SNMP

This section describes commands of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).

Example of a configuration

IP configuration

Define the IP address of the device that is suitable for the SNMP trap receiver used.

Execute the following commands:

```
configure terminal
int vlan 1
no ip address
ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
end
```

Trap configuration forr SNMPv2c notifications

To configure the sending of SNMP traps, an SBMP community is required.

This community is used along with other SNMP parameters to send traps to a trap recipient.

The selection of the traps recipient is made using tags that are set when SNMP notifications are called.

Execute the following commands:

```
configure terminal
snmp community index v2trapindex name public security v2secname
snmp targetaddr trapringer param pav2c ipv4 192.168.1.254 taglist
publictrapv2tag
snmp targetparams pav2c user v2secname security-model v2c message-
processing v2c
snmp notify testnotify tag publictrapv2tag type trap
end
```

Event configuration

Enable the sending of traps.

Execute the following commands:

```
configure terminal
events
client config trap
end
```

For system messages all configured SNMP notification are always called.

With RMOB events. the SNMP notifications to be called must be configured explicitly, see section "RMON (Page 674)".

8.5.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.5.1.1 show snmp

Description

This command shows the status information of SNMP.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp
```

Result

The status information is displayed.

8.5.1.2 show snmp community

Description

This command shows the details of the configured of SNMP communities.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp community
```

Result

The details of the configured SNMP communities are displayed.

8.5.1.3 show snmp engineID

Description

This command shows the SNMP identification number of the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp engineID
```

Result

The SNMP identification number of the device is displayed.

8.5.1.4 show snmp filter

Description

This command shows the configured SNMP filters.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp filter
```

Result

The configured SNMP filters are displayed.

8.5.1.5 show snmp group

Description

This command shows the configured SNMP groups.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp group
```

Result

The configured SNMP groups are displayed.

8.5.1.6 show snmp group access

Description

This command shows the rights of the configured SNMP groups.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp group access
```

Result

The rights of the configured SNMP groups are displayed.

8.5.1.7 show snmp inform statistics

Description

This command shows the statistics of the Inform Messages.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp inform statistics
```

Result

The statistics of the Inform Messages are displayed.

8.5.1.8 show snmp notif

Description

With this command, you display the configured SNMP notification types.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp notif
```

Result

The configured SNMP notification types are displayed.

8.5.1.9 show snmp targetaddr

Description

This command shows the configured SNMP target addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp targetaddr
```

Result

The configured SNMP target addresses are displayed.

8.5.1.10 show snmp targetparam

Description

This command shows the configured SNMP target parameters.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp targetparam
```

Result

The configured SNMP target parameters are displayed.

8.5.1.11 show snmp tcp

Description

This command shows the configuration for SNMP via TCP.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp tcp
```

Result

The configuration for SNMP via TCP is displayed.

8.5.1.12 show snmp user

Description

This command shows the settings for the SNMP users.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp user
```

Result

The settings for the SNMP users are displayed.

8.5.1.13 show snmp viewtree

Description

This command shows the settings for the SNMP tree view.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show snmp viewtree
```

Result

The settings for the SNMP tree view are displayed.

8.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.5.2.1 snmpagent

Description

With this command, you enable the SNMP agent function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
snmpagent
```

Result

The SNMP agent function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the SNMP agent function with the`no snmpagent` command.

8.5.2.2 no snmpagent

Description

With this command, you disable the SNMP agent function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no snmpagent
```

Result

The SNMP agent function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the SNMP agent function with the `snmpagent` command.

8.5.2.3 snmpagent port

Description

With this command, you specify the port at which the SNMP agent waits for the SNMP queries.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmpagent port <port-number(49500-65535)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port-number`	Port number	49500 ... 65535 Default: 161 (standard port)

Result

The port is defined.

Additional notes

You reset the port to the standard port with the `no snmpagent port` command.

8.5.2.4 no snmpagent port

Description

With this command, you reset the port to the standard port.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no snmpagent port
```

Result

The port is reset to the standard port 161.

Additional notes

You configure the port with the `snmpagent port` command.

8.5.2.5 snmp agent version

Description

With this command, you configure whether all SNMP queries or only SNMPv3 queries are processed.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp agent version {v3only | all}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`v3only`	Only SNMPv3 queries are processed	-
`all`	All SNMP queries are processed	Default: all

Result

The setting is configured.

8.5.2.6 snmp access

Description

With this command, you configure the access to an SNMP group.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp access <GroupName> {v1 | v2c | v3 {auth | noauth | priv}}
  [read <ReadView | none>] [write <WriteView | none>]  [notify
<NotifyView | none>]
 [{volatile | nonvolatile}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`GroupName`	Name of the group to which access is configured	max. 32 characters
Version	Selects the version of the protocol used	• `v1` • `v2c` • `v3`
Authentication	Selects the authentication method.	• `auth` Enables MD5 or SHA as authentication method • `noauth` No authentication • `priv` Enables authentication and encryption
`read`	The data can be read. Keyword	• `ReadView` • `none`
`write`	The data can be read and written Keyword	• `WriteView` • `none`

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`notify`	Changes can be sent as a tag. Keyword	• `NotifyView` • `none`
Storage Type	Specifies whether the settings remain following a restart.	• `volatile` : The settings are lost after a re-start • `nonvolatile` : The settings are retained after a restart

The keywords need to be specified.

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring a group, the default value will be used.

Result

The settings for access to an SNMP group are configured.

Additional notes

You delete the access to an SNMP group with the `no snmp access` command.

You display the configured SNMP groups with the `show snmp group` command.

You display the access configurations for SNMP groups with the `show snmp group access` command.

You display the configured SNMP tree views with the `show snmp viewtree` command.

8.5.2.7 no snmp access

Description

With this command, you delete the access to an SNMP group.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp access <GroupName> {v1 | v2c | v3 {auth | noauth | priv}}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`GroupName`	Name of the group to which access is deleted	max. 32 characters
Version	Selects the version of the protocol used	• `v1` • `v2c` • `v3`
Authentication	Selects the authentication method.	• `auth` • `noauth` • `priv`

Result

The access to an SNMP group is deleted.

Additional notes

You configure the setting with the `snmp access` command.

You display the configured SNMP groups with the `show snmp group` command.

You display the access configurations for SNMP groups with the `show snmp group access` command.

You display the configured SNMP tree views with the `show snmp viewtree` command.

8.5.2.8 snmp community index

Description

With this command, you configure the details of an SNMP community.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp community index <CommunityIndex> name <CommunityName>
   security <SecurityName> [context <name>] [{volatile |
nonvolatile}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`CommunityIndex`	Index of the community	Max. 256 characters
`name`	Keyword for the name of the community	-
`CommunityName`	Name of the community	Max. 256 characters
`security`	Keyword for the security name	-
`SecurityName`	Security name	Max. 32 characters
`context`	Keyword for the context name	-
`name`	Context name	Max. 32 characters
Storage type	Specifies whether the settings remain following a restart.	• : The settings are lost after a restart • : The settings are retained after a restart

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring a community, the default values apply.

Note

Community string

For security reasons, do not use the standard values "public" or "private". Change the community strings following the initial installation.

The recommended minimum length for community strings is 6 characters.

Result

The settings are configured.

Additional notes

You delete the details of an SNMP community with the `no snmp community index` command.

You show the details of an SNMP community with the `show snmp community` command.

You show the status information of the SNMP communication with the `show snmp` command.

8.5.2.9 no snmp community index

Description

With this command, you delete the details of an SNMP community.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp community index <CommunityIndex>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`CommunityIndex`	Name of the community	max. 32 characters

Result

The details of an SNMP community are deleted.

Further notes

You configure the details of an SNMP community with the `snmp community index` command.

You show the details of an SNMP community with the `show snmp community` command.

You show the status information of the SNMP communication with the `show snmp` command.

8.5.2.10 snmp engineid migrate

Description

With this command, you enable the SNMPv3 user migration.

If the function is enabled, an SNMP engine ID is generated that can be migrated. You can transfer configured SNMPv3 users to a different device. If you enable this function and load the configuration of the device on another device, configured SNMPv3 users are retained.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
snmp engineid migrate
```

Result

The SNMPv3 user migration is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the SNMPv3 user migration with the `no snmp engineid migrate` command.

8.5.2.11 no snmp engineid migrate

Description

With this command, you disable the SNMPv3 user migration.

If the function is disabled, a device-specific SNMP engine ID is generated. To generate the ID, the agent MAC address of the device is used. You cannot transfer this SNMP user configuration to other devices.

If you load the configuration of the device on another device, all configured SNMPv3 users are deleted.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no snmp engineid migrate
```

Result

The SNMPv3 user migration is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the SNMPv3 user migration with the `snmp engineid migrate` command.

8.5.2.12 snmp group

Description

With this command, you configure the details of an SNMP group.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp group <GroupName> user <UserName> security-model {v1|v2c|v3}
   [{volatile|nonvolatile}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`GroupName`	Name of the group	max. 32 characters
`user`	Keyword for the user name	-
`UserName`	Name of the user	max. 32 characters
`security-model`	Specifies which security settings will be used.	• `v1` • `v2c` • `v3`
Storage type	Specifies whether the settings remain following a restart.	• `volatile` : The settings are lost after a re-start • `nonvolatile` : The settings are retained after a restart.

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring a group, the default values apply.

Result

The details of the group are configured.

Further notes

You delete the details of an SNMP group with the `no snmp group` command.

You display the created SNMP groups with the `show snmp group` command.

You display the created SNMP users with the `show snmp user` command.

8.5.2.13 no snmp group

Description

With this command, you delete the details of an SNMP group.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp group <GroupName> user <UserName> security-model {v1|v2c|v3}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`GroupName`	Name of the group	max. 32 characters
`user`	Keyword for the user name	-
`UserName`	Name of the user	max. 32 characters
`security-model`	Specifies which security settings are used for sending.	• `v1` • `v2c` • `v3`

Result

The details of the group are deleted.

Further notes

You change the details of an SNMP group with the `snmp group` command.

You display the created SNMP groups with the `show snmp group` command.

You display the created SNMP users with the `show snmp user` command.

8.5.2.14 snmp notify

Description

With this command, you configure the details of the SNMP notifications.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp notify <NotifyName> tag <TagName> type {Trap|Inform}
   [{volatile|nonvolatile}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`NotifyName`	Name of the SNMP notification	max. 32 characters
`tag`	Keyword for a target key	-
`TagName`	Name of the target key	max. 32 characters
`Type`	Type of the SNMP notification	• `Trap` Generates a trap. • `Inform` Generates a log entry or sends an entry to the log server.
Storage type	Specifies whether the settings remain following a restart.	• : The settings are lost after a re-start • : The settings are retained after a restart

Result

The details of the SNMP notifications are configured.

Further notes

You delete the details of an SNMP notification with the `no snmp notify` command.

You display the configured SNMP notifications with the `show snmp notif` command.

You display the configured SNMP target addresses with the `show snmp targetaddr` command.

8.5.2.15 no snmp notify

Description

With this command, you delete the details of the SNMP notifications.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp notify <NotifyName>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`NotifyName`	Name of the notification	max. 32 characters

Result

The details of the SNMP notifications are deleted.

Further notes

You change the details of an SNMP group with the `snmp notify` command.

You display the configured SNMP notifications with the `show snmp notif` command.

You display the configured SNMP target addresses with the `show snmp targetaddr` command.

8.5.2.16 snmp targetaddr

Description

With this command, you configure the SNMP target address.

Requirement

The SNMP target parameters are configured.

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp targetaddr <TargetAddressName> param <ParamName>
{ipv4<IPAddress>}
   [timeout <Seconds(1-1500)] [retries <RetryCount(1-3)]
   [taglist <TagIdentifier | none>]  [{volatile | nonvolatile}]
   [port <integer (1-65535)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
`TargetAddressName`	Name of the target address	max. 32 characters
`param`	Keyword for the parameter name	-
`ParamName`	Name of the destination address or the designation of the parameter name	max. 32 characters
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
`IPAddress`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`timeout`	Keyword for the time the SNMP agent waits for a response before it repeats the inform request message	-
`Seconds`	Time in seconds	1 ... 1500
`retries`	Keyword for the maximum number of attempts to obtain a response to an inform request message	-
`RetryCount`	Number of attempts	1 ... 3
`taglist`	Keyword for tag list	-
`TagIdentifier`	Tag identifier that selects the target address for SNMP.	Specify the tag identifier.
`none`	No tag identifier	-
Storage Type	Specifies whether the settings remain following a restart.	• `volatile`: The default settings are used after a restart. • `nonvolatile`: The saved settings are used after a restart.
`port`	Keyword for the port number at which the SNMP manager receives traps and inform messages	-
`integer`	Port number	1 ... 65535

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring, the following defaults apply:

Parameter	Default value
`taglist`	snmp
Storage Type	`volatile`
`port`	162

Result

The SNMP target address is configured.

Further notes

You delete the SNMP target address with the `no snmp targetaddr` command.

You display the SNMP target address with the `show snmp targetaddr` command.

You configure the SNMP target parameters with the `snmp targetparams` command.

You display the SNMP target parameters with the `show snmp targetparam` command.

8.5.2.17 no snmp targetaddr

Description

With this command, you delete the SNMP target address.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp targetaddr <TargetAddressName>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`TargetAddressName`	SNMP target address	max. 32 characters

Result

The SNMP target address is deleted.

Further notes

You change the SNMP target address with the `snmp targetaddr` command.

You display the SNMP target address with the `show snmp targetaddr` command.

8.5.2.18 snmp targetparams

Description

With this command, you configure the SNMP target parameters.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp targetparams <ParamName> user <UserName>  security-model {v1 |
v2c | v3 {auth | noauth | priv}}
  message-processing {v1 | v2c | v3} [{volatile | nonvolatile}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ParamName`	Name of the SNMP parameter	max. 32 characters
`user`	Keyword for the user name	-
`UserName`	Value for the user name	max. 32 characters

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`security-model`	Specifies which SNMP version is used. With SNMPv3 a security level (authentication, encryption) can also be configured.	• SNMP version – `v1` – `v2c` – `v3` • Security level for v3 – `auth` Authentication enabled / no encryption enabled – `noauth` No authentication enabled, no encryption enabled – `priv` Authentication enabled / encryption enabled
`message-processing`	Specifies which SNMP version is used for processing the messages and whether the settings remain following a restart.	• SNMP version – `v1` – `v2c` – `v3` • Settings after the restart – `volatile`: The settings are lost after a restart. – `nonvolatile`: The settings are retained after a restart.

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring, the default values apply.

Result

The SNMP target parameters are configured.

Additional notes

You delete the SNMP target parameters with the `no snmp targetparams` command.

You display settings of this function with the `show snmp targetparam` command.

You configure the user profile with the `snmp user` command.

You display the list of users with the `show snmp user` command.

8.5.2.19 no snmp targetparams

Description

With this command, you delete the SNMP target parameters.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp targetparams <ParamName>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ParamName`	Name of the SNMP parameter	max. 32 characters

Result

The SNMP target parameters are deleted.

Further notes

You change the SNMP target parameters with the `snmp targetparams` command.

You display settings of this function with the `show targetparam` command.

8.5.2.20 snmp v1-v2 readonly

Description

With this command, you block write access for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 PDUs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
snmp v1-v2 readonly
```

Result

Write access for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 PDUs is blocked.

Further notes

You release write access for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 PDUs with the `no snmp v1-v2 readonly` command.

8.5.2.21 no snmp v1-v2 readonly

Description

With this command, you enable write access for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 PDUs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no snmp v1-v2 readonly
```

Result

Write access for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 PDUs is enabled.

Further notes

You block write access for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 PDUs with the `snmp v1-v2 readonly` command.

8.5.2.22 snmp user

Description

With this command, you configure the details of an SNMP user.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp user <UserName> [auth {md5 | sha} <passwd> [priv {DES | AES128}
<passwd>]] [{volatile | nonvolatile}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`UserName`	Name of the user	max. 32 characters
`auth`	Keyword for the authentication	Default: No authentication
`md5`	MD5 (Message Digest 5) is used as hash function.	-
`sha`	SHA (Secure Hash Algorithm) is used as hash function.	-
`passwd`	Password for authentication	max. 32 characters
`priv`	Specifies that there is encryption.	Default: No encryption
`DES`	DES is used as encryption algorithm.	-
`AES128`	AES128 is used as encryption algorithm.	-
`passwd`	Value for the password of the encryption	max. 32 characters
`volatile`	The default settings are used after a restart.	-
`nonvolatile`	The saved settings are used after a restart.	-

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring an SNMP user, the default values apply.

Result

The details of an SNMP user are configured.

Additional notes

You delete the settings with the `no snmp user` command.

You display the configured users with the `show snmp user` command.

8.5.2.23 no snmp user

Description

With this command, you delete the details of an SNMP user.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp user <UserName>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`UserName`	Name of the user	max. 32 characters

Result

The details of an SNMP user are deleted.

Further notes

You change the settings with the `snmp user` command.

You display the configured users with the `show snmp user`command.

8.5.2.24 snmp view

Description

With this command, you configure an SNMP view.

Requirement

- An SNMP group has been created
- The access to the group is configured with `snmp access`
- You are in the Global Configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snmp view <ViewName> <OIDTree> [mask <OIDMask>] {included | excluded}
   [{volatile | nonvolatile}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ViewName`	Name of the SNMP view	max. 32 characters
`OIDTree`	Object ID	Path information of the MIB tree
`mask`	Keyword for the OID mask	-
`OIDMask`	Mask that filters access to the elements of the MIB tree	A series of "`0`" and "`1`" separated by dots in keeping with the path information of the MIB tree
View type	Specifies whether the filtered elements are used or excluded.	• `included` (Default) • `excluded`
Storage type	Specifies whether the settings remain following a restart.	• `volatile`: The settings are lost after a restart • `nonvolatile`: The settings are retained after a restart (default).

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring, the default values apply.

Result

The SNMP view is configured.

Additional notes

You delete the view with the `no snmp view` command.

You display the configured SNMP tree views with the `show snmp viewtree` command.

You display the access rights of the SNMP groups with the `show snmp group access` command.

You configure the access rights of the SNMP groups with the `snmp access`command.

8.5.2.25 no snmp view

Description

With this command, you delete an SNMP view.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no snmp view <ViewName> <OIDTree>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ViewName`	Name of the view	max. 32 characters
`OIDTree`	Object ID	Path information of the MIB tree

Result

The SNMP view is deleted.

Further notes

You configure a view with the `snmp view` command.

You display the configured SNMP tree views with the `show snmp viewtree` command.

8.6 SMTP client

This section describes commands of the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP).

8.6.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.6.1.1 show events smtp-server

Description

This command shows the configured e-mail servers.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show events smtp-server
```

Result

The configured e-mail servers are displayed.

8.6.1.2 show events sender email

Description

This command shows the configured e-mail sender address.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show events sender email
```

Result

The configured e-mail sender address is displayed.

8.6.1.3 show events smtp-port

Description

This command shows the configured SNMP port.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show events smtp-port
```

Result

The configured SMTP port is displayed.

8.6.2 Commands in the Events configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the EVENTS configuration mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `events` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in EVENTS configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.6.2.1 smtp-server

Description

With this command, you configure an entry for an SMTP server.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
smtp-server {ipv4 <ucast_addr>} <receiver mail-address>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
`ucast_addr`	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid IPv4 unicast address.
`receiver mail-address`	Name of the recipient	max. 100 characters

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

An entry for the SMTP server is configured.

Further notes

You delete an SMTP server entry with the `no smtp-server` command.

8.6.2.2 no smtp-server

Description

With this command, you delete an SMTP server entry.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no smtp-server ipv4 <ucast_addr>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address	-
`ucast_addr`	Value for an IPv4 address	Enter a valid IPv4 address.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The SMTP server entry is deleted.

Further notes

You configure an e-mail server entry with the `smtp-server` command.

8.6.2.3 sender mail-address

Description

With this command, you configure the e-mail name of the sender.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
sender mail-address <mail-address>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mail-address`	Email name of the sender	max. 100 characters

Result

The e-mail name of the sender is configured.

Further notes

You reset the e-mail name of the sender with the `no sender mail-address`.

You display the setting with the `show events sender email` command.

8.6.2.4 no sender mail-address

Description

With this command, you reset the e-mail name of the sender.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no sender mail-address
```

Result

The e-mail name of the sender is reset.

Further notes

You configure the e-mail name of the sender with the `sender mail-address`.

You display the setting with the `show events sender email` command.

8.6.2.5 send test mail

Description

With this command, you send an e-mail according to the currently configured SMTP settings.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
send test mail
```

Result

An e-mail according to the currently configured SMTP settings is sent.

Further notes

You can display the current SMTP settings with the `show events smtp-server` command.

8.6.3 Commands in SMTP server configuration mode

8.6.3.1 Introductory sentence for the SMTP server configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the SMTP server configuration mode.

In the Events configuration mode, enter the `smtp-server` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the SMTP server configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the events configuration mode.
- If you exit the SMTP server configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

8.6.3.2 auth username

Description

With this command, you configure the user data (user name and password) used for authentication on the SMTP server.

Requirement

You are in the SMTP server configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(events-smtp-server)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
auth username <username> password <password>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`username`	Keyword for a user name	-
`username`	User name	Enter the user name used for authentication on the SMTP server. Maximum length: 64 characters
`password`	Keyword for a password	-
`password`	Password	Enter the password used for authentication on the SMTP server. Maximum length: 64 characters

Result

The user data is configured.

Further notes

You delete the user data with the `no auth username` command.

You display this setting with the `show events smtp-server` command.

8.6.3.3 no auth username

Description

With this command, you delete the user data.

Requirement

You are in the SMTP server configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(events-smtp-server)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no auth username
```

Result

The SMTP port is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the user data with the `auth username` command.

You display this setting with the `show events smtp-server` command.

8.6.3.4 port

Description

With this command, you configure the port via which the SMTP server can be reached.

Requirement

You are in SMTP server configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(events-smtp-server)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
port <smtp-port(1-65535)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`smtp-port`	Value for the SMTP port	1 ... 65535 Default: • 25 (no security) • 465 (security)

Result

The SMTP port is configured.

Additional notes

You display this setting with the `show events smtp-server` command.

You reset the setting to the default with the `no port` command.

8.6.3.5 no port

Description

With this command, you reset the SMTP port to the default.

Requirement

You are in SMTP server configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(events-smtp-server)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no port
```

Result

The SMTP port is reset to the default value.

- 25 (no security)
- 465 (security)

Additional notes

You configure the setting with the `port` command.

You display this setting with the `show events smtp-server` command.

8.6.3.6 sender address

Description

With this command, you configure the sender specified in the e-mail.

Requirement

You are in the SMTP server configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(events-smtp-server)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
sender-address <mail-address>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mail-address`	Sender Email Address	Max. 100 characters

Result

The e-mail address of the sender is configured.

Further notes

You display this setting with the `show events smtp-server` command.

You delete the sender with the `no sender-address` command.

8.6.3.7 no sender address

Description

You delete the sender with this command.

Requirement

You are in the SMTP server configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(events-smtp-server)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no sender-address
```

Result

The e-mail name of the sender is deleted.

Further notes

You configure a sender with the `sender-address` command.

You display this setting with the `show events smtp-server` command.

8.6.3.8 receiver-address

Description

With this command, you specify who receives an e-mail when an event occurs.

Requirement

- "email" is activated for the event in question.
- You are in the SMTP server configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(events-smtp-server)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`receiver-address <mail-address> [shutdown]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mail-address`	Receiver Email Address	Max. 100 characters
`shutdown`	Disables sending of the e-mail. This recipient will not receive an e-mail when an event occurs.	-

Result

A recipient is configured.

Further notes

You delete the recipient with the `no receiver-address` command.

You display this setting with the `show events smtp-server` command.

You configure the setting "`email`" with the `event config` command.

8.6.3.9 no receiver-address

Description

With this command, you delete a recipient.

Requirement

You are in the SMTP server configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(events-smtp-server)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no receiver-address <mail-address>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mail-address`	Receiver Email Address	Max. 100 characters

Result

The recipient is deleted.

Further notes

You create a recipient with the `receiver-address` command.

You display this setting with the `show events smtp-server` command.

8.6.3.10 security

Description

With this command, you configure the method for encrypted transfer of the e-mail from the device to the SMTP server.

Requirement

You are in the SMTP server configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(events-smtp-server)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
security {ssltls | starttls}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ssltls`	Uses SSL/TLS	-
`starttls`	Uses STARTTLS	-

Result

The method for the transfer is configured.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no security` command.

You display this setting with the `show events smtp-server` command.

8.6.3.11 no security

Description

With this command, you specify that the e-mail is transferred unencrypted.

Requirement

You are in the SMTP server configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(events-smtp-server)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no security
```

Result

Transfer of the e-mail from the device to the SMTP server is unencrypted.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `security` command.

You display this setting with the `show events smtp-server` command.

8.6.3.12 smtp-server-enable

Description

With this command, you enable the SMTP server.

Requirement

You are in SMTP server configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(events-smtp-server)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
smtp-server-enable
```

Result

The SMTP server is enabled.

Additional notes

You disable the SMTP server with the `no smtp-server-enable` command.

8.6.3.13 no smtp-server-enable

Description

You disable the SMTP server with this command.

Requirement

You are in SMTP server configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(events-smtp-server)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no smtp-server-enable
```

Result

The SMTP server is disabled.

Additional notes

You activate the SMTP server with the `smtp-server-enable` command.

8.7 HTTP server

This section describes commands of the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP).

8.7.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.7.1.1 show ip http server status

Description

This command shows the status of the HTTP server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ip http server status
```

Result

The status of the HTTP server is displayed.

8.7.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.7.2.1 ip http

Description

With this command, you enable HTTP access to the WBM.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip http
```

As default the function is "enabled".

Result

HTTP access is enabled.

Additional notes

You can display the setting of this function and other information with the `show ip http server status`command.

You disable HTTP access with the `no ip http` command.

8.7.2.2 no ip http

Description

With this command, you disable HTTP access.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip http
```

Result

Access to the WBM is now only possible with HTTPS.

Additional notes

You can display the setting of this function and other information with the `show ip http server status`command.

You enable HTTP access with the `ip http` command.

8.7.2.3 ip http port

Description

With this command you specify the port for HTTP access to the WBM.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip http port <port-number(49500-65535)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port-number`	Port number	49500 ... 65535 Default: 80 (standard port)

Result

The port for HTTP access has been changed. Access the WBM with the changed port.

Further notes

You reset the port to the standard port with the `no ip http port` command.

8.7.2.4 no ip http port

Description

With this command, you reset the port to the standard port.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip http port
```

Result

The port is reset to the standard port 80.

Further notes

You configure the port for HTTP access with the ip http port command

8.8 HTTPS server

This section describes commands of the Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS).

8.8.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.8.1.1 show ip http secure server status

Description

This command shows the status of the HTTPS server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ip http secure server status
```

Result

The status, cipher suite and version of the HTTPS server are displayed.

8.8.1.2 show ssl server-cert

Description

This command shows the SSL server certificate.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ssl server-cert
```

Result

The SSL server certificate is displayed.

8.8.2 Commands in global configuration mode

8.8.2.1 ip http secure

Description

With this command, you enable HTTPS access to the WBM.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip http secure
```

Result

HTTP is enabled on the device.

Additional notes

You disable HTTPS access with the `no ip http secure` command.

8.8.2.2 no ip http secure

Description

With this command, you disable HTTPS access to the WBM.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip http secure
```

Result

Access to the WBM is now only possible with HTTP.

Additional notes

You enable HTTPS access with the `ip http secure` command.

8.8.2.3 ip http secure port

Description

With this command you specify the port for HTTPS access to the WBM.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip http secure port <port-number(49500-65535)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port-number`	Value for the HTTPS port	49500 ... 65535 Default: 443 (standard port)

Result

The port for HTTPS access has been changed. Access the WBM with the changed port.

Further notes

You reset the port to the standard port with the `no ip http port` command.

8.8.2.4 no ip http secure port

Description

With this command, you reset the HTTPS port to the standard port.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip http secure port
```

Result

The port is reset to the standard port 443.

Further notes

You configure the port for HTTPS access with the `ip http secure port` command

8.9 ARP

This section describes commands of the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP).

8.9.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.9.1.1 show ip arp

Description

With this command, you display the ARP table. The ARP table contains the clear assignment of MAC address to IPv4 address.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip arp [{vlan <vlan-id (1-4094)> | <interface-type> <interface-
id> | <ip-address> | <mac-address> | summary | information}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`ip-address`	Shows the IPv4 addresses of the entries in the ARP table	-
`mac-address`	Shows the MAC addresses of the entries in the ARP table	-

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`summary`	Shows a summary of the entries in the ARP table	-
`information`	Displays information on the ARP configuration	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, all parameters of the ARP table are displayed.

Result

The ARP table is displayed.

8.9.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.9.2.1 arp timeout

Description

With this command, you configure the timeout setting of the ARP cache.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
arp timeout <seconds(30-86400)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`seconds`	Value for the timeout in seconds	30 ... 86400 Default: 300

Result

The setting for the timeout setting of the ARP cache is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the timeout setting to the default with the `no arp timeout` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip arp` command.

8.9.2.2 no arp timeout

Description

With this command, you reset the timeout setting of the ARP cache back to the default value.

The default value for the timeout setting is 300 seconds.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no arp timeout
```

Result

The timeout setting for the ARP cache is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You change the timeout setting with the `arp timeout` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip arp` command.

8.10 SSH server

This section describes commands of the Secure Shell (SSH) Server.

8.10.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.10.1.1 show ip ssh

Description

This command shows the settings of the SSH server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ip ssh
```

Result

The settings for the SSH server are displayed.

8.10.1.2 show ssh-fingerprint

Description

This command shows the SSH fingerprint.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ssh-fingerprint
```

Result

The SSH fingerprint is displayed.

8.10.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

8.10.2.1 ssh-server

Description

With this command, you enable the SSH protocol on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ssh-server
```

As default the function is "enabled".

Result

The SSH protocol is enabled on the device.

Further notes

You disable the SSH protocol with the `no ssh-server` command.

8.10.2.2 no ssh-server

Description

With this command, you disable the SSH protocol on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ssh-server
```

Result

The SSH protocol is disabled on the device.

Further notes

You enable the SSH protocol with the `ssh-server` command.

8.10.2.3 ssh-server port

Description

With this command, you specify the port for SSH access to the CLI.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ssh-server port <port-number(49500-65535)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port-number`	Value for SSH port	49500 ... 65535 Default: 22 (standard port)

Result

The port for SSH access has been changed. Access the CLI with the changed port.

Additional notes

You reset the port to the standard port with the `no ssh-server port` command.

8.10.2.4 no ssh-server port

Description

With this command, you reset the port to the standard port.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ssh-server port
```

Result

The port is reset to the standard port 22.

Additional notes

You configure the port for SSH access with the `ssh-server port.` command

Layer 2 management protocols

9

This part contains the sections that cover the following topics:

- GARP
- IGMP Snooping and IGMP Querying
- Redundancy
  - Ring redundancy
  - Standby redundancy
  - Link Check
  - MRP Interconnection

9.1 GARP

This section describes commands of the following protocols:

- GARP - Generic Attribute Registration Protocol
- GMRP - GARP Multicast Registration Protocol
- GVRP - GARP VLAN Registration Protocol

Timer

The following timers are set in the protocols mentioned above. The timer values are not configurable.

Timer	Description	Factory setting
Join-time	Time in milliseconds that passes between the transfer of two PDUs (Protocol Data Unit)	200 ms
Leave-time	Time period of the timer in milliseconds before the device changes its GARP status The timer starts and runs backwards with the defined time as soon as the device sends or receives a "Leave-all-time" message. The timer is stopped when the device receives a Join message.	600 ms
Leave-all-time	Time period of the timer in milliseconds before all devices change their GARP status	10000 ms

In devices connected via Layer 2, the same values must be set for the GARP/GMRP timer. If different values are set with the GARP/GMRP timers, GARP applications such as GMRP and GVRP cannot be executed successfully.

9.1.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.1.1.1 show forward-all

Description

With this command, you display the entries of the GMRP forward all table.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show forward-all
```

Result

The entries of the GMRP forward all table are displayed.

9.1.1.2 show forward-unregistered

Description

With this command, you display the entries of the GMRP forward unregistered table.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show forward-unregistered
```

Result

The entries of the GMRP forward unregistered table are displayed.

9.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.1.2.1 gmrp

Description

With this command, you enable the GMRP function for all or individual interfaces on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode

or

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
cli (config-if-$$$) #
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
gmrp
```

Result

In the Global configuration mode: The GMRP function is enabled on the device.

In the Interface configuration mode: The GMRP function is enabled for this interface.

Further notes

You need to enable GMRP globally for this device before you enable GMRP for individual interfaces.

If you want to enable or disable the function for a specific interface on the device, use the `no gmrp` command in the Interface configuration mode.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan device info` command.

9.1.2.2 no gmrp

Description

With this command, you disable the GMRP function for all or individual interfaces on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode

or

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
cli (config-if-$$$) #
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no gmrp
```

Result

In the Global configuration mode: The GMRP function is disabled on the device.

In the Interface configuration mode: The GMRP function is disabled for this interface.

Further notes

If you want to enable the function for a specific interface on the device, use the `gmrp` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan device info` command.

9.1.2.3 gvrp

Description

With this command, you enable the GVRP function for all or individual interfaces on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode

or

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
cli (config-if-$$$) #
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
gvrp
```

Result

In the Global configuration mode: The GVRP function is enabled on the device.

In the Interface configuration mode: The GVRP function is enabled for this interface.

Further notes

If you have enabled the GARP module, you start GVRP explicitly with this command.

If you want to disable the function for a specific interface on the device, use the `no gvrp` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan device info` command.

9.1.2.4 no gvrp

Description

With this command, you disable the GVRP function for all or individual interfaces on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode

or

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
cli (config-if-$$$) #
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no gvrp
```

Result

In the Global configuration mode: The GVRP function is disabled on the device.

In the Interface configuration mode: The GVRP function is disabled for this interface.

Further notes

If you want to enable the function for a specific interface on the device, use the `gvrp` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show vlan device info` command.

9.2 IGMP snooping

This section describes the snooping functionality of the Internet Group Management Protocol.

9.2.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.2.1.1 show ip igmp snooping

Description

This command shows information about IGMP snooping for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode or in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#` or `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip igmp snooping [vlan <vlan-id (1-4094)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The information about IGMP snooping is displayed.

9.2.1.2 show ip igmp snooping forwarding-database

Description

This command shows the multicast forwarding entries for all or a selected VLAN. Optionally, only statically configured or dynamically learned multicast groups can be displayed.

Requirement

- IGMP snooping is enabled on the device
- You are in the User EXEC mode or Privileged EXEC mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip igmp snooping forwarding-database [vlan <vlan-id (1-4094)>]
[{static | dynamic}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`static`	Only the statically configured multicast groups are displayed.	-
`dynamic`	Only the groups learned dynamically over the IGMP configuration are displayed.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The multicast forwarding entries are displayed.

9.2.1.3 show ip igmp snooping globals

Description

This command shows an overview of the settings of IGMP snooping.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
show ip igmp snooping globals
```

Result

The settings are displayed.

9.2.1.4 show ip igmp snooping groups

Description

This command shows information about IGMP snooping for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode or in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#` or `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip igmp snooping groups [vlan <vlan-id (1-4094)> [Group
<Address>]] [{static | dynamic}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`Group`		
`Address`		
-		• `static` • `dynamic`

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The information about IGMP snooping is displayed.

9.2.1.5 show ip igmp snooping mrouter

Description

This command shows the ports at which IGMP queriers are connected for all or a selected VLAN..

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`show ip igmp snooping mrouter [vlan <vlan-id (1-4094)>] [detail]`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameters	Description	Range of values
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN or VLAN range	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN or VLAN range	1 ... 4094
`detail`	Specifies that detailed information is displayed.	-

Result

A list of the active ports is displayed.

9.2.1.6 show ip igmp snooping statistics

Description

This command shows the statistical information about IGMP snooping for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip igmp snooping statistics [vlan <vlan-id (1-4094)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The statistical information is displayed.

9.2.1.7 show ip igmp snooping switch-ip

Description

This command shows the IP address of the source for IGMP snooping.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ip igmp snooping switch-ip
```

Result

The IP address is displayed.

9.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.2.2.1 ip igmp snooping version

Description

This command specifies which version of IGMP snooping the device will use. When shipped, the device uses IGMPv3.

Note

There is no separate show command to display the version of IGMP used by the device. This information is shown when you enter the `show ip igmp snooping` command in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip igmp snooping version {v1 | v2 | v3}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`v1`	IGMPv1
`v2`	IGMPv2
`v3`	IGMPv3

Result

The version of IGMP snooping used by the device is specified.

9.2.2.2 ip igmp vlan-snooping

Description

With this command, you enable IGMP snooping for all VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip igmp vlan-snooping
```

Result

IGMP snooping is enabled for all VLANs.

Further notes

You disable IGMP snooping with the `no ip igmp vlan-snooping` command.

9.2.2.3 no ip igmp vlan-snooping

Description

With this command, you disable IGMP snooping for all VLANs.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip igmp vlan-snooping
```

Result

IGMP snooping is disabled for all VLANs.

Further notes

You enable IGMP snooping with the `ip igmp vlan-snooping` command.

9.2.2.4 ip igmp snooping clear counters

Description

With this command, you delete the counters for all or a selected VLAN.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip igmp snooping clear counters [vlan <vlan-id (1-4094)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select a VLAN, the counters of all VLANs will be deleted.

Result

The counters are deleted.

9.2.2.5 ip igmp snooping switch-ip

Description

With this command, you configure the IP address of the source for IGMP snooping queries.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip igmp snooping switch-ip<switch-ipaddr>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`switch-ipaddr`	Address of the source	Specify a valid IP address. Default: 10.0.0.1

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The IP address is configured.

9.2.2.6 snooping report-process config-level

Description

With this command, you configure which IGMP reports the device processes.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
snooping report-process config-level {non-router-ports | all-ports}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
non-router-ports	The device only processes IGMP reports that were received by non-multicast router ports.	Default
all-ports	The device processes all IGMP reports.	-

Result

The processing of IGMP reports is configured.

Additional notes

You display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip igmp snooping globals` command.

9.2.2.7 ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval

Description

The time after which a port is deleted from the list if no IGMP router control packets are received is known as the purge time.

With this command, you configure this purge time for a port for a VLAN in seconds.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval <(130-1225)seconds>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
-	Value for the purge time in seconds	130 ... 1225 Default: 300

Result

The purge time is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip igmp snooping globals` command.

9.2.2.8 no ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval

Description

With this command, you reset the setting for the purge time to the default value.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval
```

Result

The purge time is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip igmp snooping globals`command.

9.3 IGMP querier

This section describes the commands for the query functionality of the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP).

9.3.1 Commands in the Global Configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.3.1.1 ip igmp snooping querier

Description

With this command, you configure the IGMP snooping switch as querier.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip igmp snooping querier
```

As default the function is "disabled".

Result

The IGMP snooping switch is configured as querier.

Further notes

You delete the setting with the `no ip igmp snooping querier` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip igmp snooping` command.

9.3.1.2 no ip igmp snooping querier

Description

With this command, you delete the configuration of an IGMP snooping switch as querier.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip igmp snooping querier
```

Result

The configuration of the IGMP snooping switch as querier is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `ip igmp snooping querier` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip igmp snooping` command.

9.3.2 Commands in VLAN configuration mode

9.3.2.1 Introductory sentence for the VLAN configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the VLAN Configuration mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `vlan $$$` command to change to this mode. When doing this, you need to replace the `$$$` placeholders with the relevant VLAN ID.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the VLAN Configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the VLAN Configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global Configuration mode.
- If you exit the VLAN Configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in VLAN configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.3.2.2 ip igmp snooping querier

Description

With this command, you enable the function IGMP Snooping Querier for a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip igmp snooping querier
```

As default the function is "disabled".

Result

The IGMP Snooping Querier function is enabled for the specified VLAN.

Additional notes

You disable the function IGMP Snooping Querier for a VLAN with the `no ip igmp snooping querier` command.

You display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip igmp snooping` command.

9.3.2.3 no ip igmp snooping querier

Description

With this command, you disable the function IGMP Snooping Querier for a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in VLAN configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-vlan-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip igmp snooping querier
```

Result

The IGMP Snooping Querier function is disabled for the specified VLAN.

Additional notes

You enable the function IGMP Snooping Querier for a VLAN with the `ip igmp snooping querier` command.

You display the status of this function and other information with the `show ip igmp snooping` command.

9.4 Ring redundancy and standby connection

Note

Avoiding bad configurations

When using the commands in this section, you should take particular care because a bad configuration of this function can have serious negative affects on the network.

Ring redundancy

The ring redundancy function allows several devices to be interconnected in a ring structure. Since such a topology is not supported in normal network operation, such rings are logically disconnected using the Media Redundancy Protocol (MRP) or the High Speed Redundancy Protocol (HRP). If one component fails, all other elements of the ring can still be reached.

The device that logically disconnects the ring is known as the redundancy manager (RM).

The simple structure of the individual rings allows shorter reaction times if disruptions occur:

- MRP approx. 200 ms
- HRP approx. 300 ms

Complex network topologies cannot be set up with this function.

Standby (HRP)

Two network segments can be connected redundantly in each case via two links (master, slave). This function is known as the standby connection.

With it, the links of the interfaces of the master device are active and the links of the interfaces of the slave device are inactive.

Note

Position of master and slave device

The master and slave device of a standby connection (link pair between different structures of the ring redundancy) must be located in the same ring.

Note

Restriction in redundant linking of multiple HRP network segments

When linking multiple network segments over standby redundancy, make sure that the standby master and standby slave are located in a closed network segment, a HRP ring.

Otherwise, in the event of an error, there may be circulating frames that cause a failure in the network.

Link Check

With the Link Check function, you can monitor the transmission quality of optical sections within an HRP or MRP ring, identify disturbed connections and under certain conditions turn them off.

When the disturbed section is turned off, the redundancy manager can close the ring and restore communication.

NOTICE
Make sure that the frames used by Link Check for monitoring the optical connections are not supplanted by an overload of high-priority frames in the network. An overload of high priority frames can be caused by the following, for example: • Network loops that can cause duplication of the high-priority frames • Changing the priorities for forwarding frames

9.4.1 clear hrp counters

Description

With this command, you reset the HRP counters.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear hrp counters
```

Result

The HRP counters have been reset.

9.4.2 clear ring-redundancy manager counters

Note

This command can only be executed when the ring redundancy mode "HRP Manager" is configured.

Description

With this command, you reset the following counters:

- How often the device as redundancy manager switched to the active status. With this status change, the redundancy manager opens its blocked port because it no longer receives its sent RM frames.
- The maximum delay time of the test frames of the redundancy manager.

Requirement

You are in User EXEC mode or in Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear ring-redundancy manager counters
```

Result

The counters are reset.

9.4.3 clear standby counter

Description

With this command, you reset the counters of the standby function.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear standby counter
```

Result

The standby counter is reset.

9.4.4 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.4.4.1 show hrp counters

Description

With this command, you display the following information:

- How often the device as redundancy manager switched to the active status, i.e. opened its blocked port because it no longer receives its sent RM frames.
- The maximum delay time of the test frames of the redundancy manager.
- How often the IE switch has changed the standby status from "Passive" to "Active".

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show hrp counters
```

Result

The counters are displayed.

9.4.4.2 show linkcheck

Description

With this command you show the following information on the link check:

- The ring ports on which you can enable Link Check
- The current status
- The statistics of sent and received Link Check frames of the monitored connections.

Note

If you use Link Check together with a redundancy protocol (e.g. HRP), the values for the sent and received Link Check frames can be different.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show linkcheck
```

Result

The current information is displayed.

9.4.4.3 show ring-redundancy

Description

With this command, you show the current configuration of the ring redundancy and standby functions.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ring-redundancy
```

Result

The current configurations are displayed.

9.4.4.4 show ring-redundancy manager counters

Description

With this command, you display the following information:

- How often the device as redundancy manager switched to the active status, i.e. opened its blocked port because it no longer receives its sent RM frames.
- The maximum delay time of the test frames of the redundancy manager.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show ring-redundancy manager counters
```

Result

The counters are displayed.

9.4.5 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.4.5.1 ring-redundancy configuration

Description

With this command, you change to the Redundancy Configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ring-redundancy configuration
```

Result

You are now in the Redundancy Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Further notes

You exit the Redundancy Configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command.

9.4.5.2 ring-redundancy hrpobserver

Description

With this command, you enable the observer or restart it.

The “observer” function is only available in HRP rings. The observer monitors malfunctions of the redundancy manager or incorrect configurations of an HRP ring.

If the observer is enabled, it can interrupt the connected ring if errors are detected. To do this, the observer switches a ring port to the "blocking" status. When the error is resolved, the observer enables the port again.

If numerous errors occur in quick succession, the observer no longer enables its port automatically. The ring port remains permanently in the "blocking" status. This is signaled by the error LED and a message text. After the errors have been eliminated, you can enable the port again with this command and the parameter `restart`.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ring-redundancy hrpobserver [restart]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`restart`	Restarts the observer.

If you do not specify the optional parameter, the observer is enabled.

Result

The observer is enabled or restarted.

Further notes

You disable the observer with the `no ring-redundancy hrpobserver` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.5.3 no ring-redundancy hrpobserver

Description

With this command, you disable the observer.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ring-redundancy hrpobserver
```

Result

The observer is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the observer with the `ring-redundancy hrpobserver` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.5.4 ring-redundancy mode

Description

With this command, you enable the ring redundancy function on a device.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
ring-redundancy mode {ard | mrpauto | mrpclient | mrpmanager |
hrpclient | hrpmanager}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ard`	Enables the automatic redundancy mode (Automatic Redundancy Detection).	• Default setting with PROFINET variants: enabled • Default setting with EtherNet/IP variants: disabled • Default setting with Industrial Ethernet variants: disabled
`mrpauto`	Enables the automatic MRP manager.	-
`mrpclient`	Enables ring redundancy with the MRP protocol as client.	-

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
mrpmanager	Enables ring redundancy with the MRP protocol as manager.	Only available with DNA devices.
hrpclient	Enables ring redundancy with the HRP protocol as client.	-
hrpmanager	Enables ring redundancy with the HRP protocol in redundancy manager mode.	-

Result

The ring redundancy function is enabled and the redundancy mode is selected.

Additional notes

You disable the ring redundancy function with the `no ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.5.5 no ring-redundancy

Description

With this command, you disable the ring redundancy function on a device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ring-redundancy
```

Result

The ring redundancy function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the ring redundancy function with the `ring-redundancy mode` command.

9.4.5.6 ring-redundancy dna-redundancy

Description

With this command, you enable Dual Network Access redundancy (DNA redundancy) on the device.

Requirements

- You are in global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config)#`
- The device must be configured as MRP manager or MRP client. DNA redundancy is only possible with MRP.

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ring-redundancy dna-redundancy
```

Result

DNA Redundancy is enabled.

Additional notes

You disable DNA Redundancy with the `no ring-redundancy dna-redundancy` command.

You display the current configuration of the ring redundancy with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.5.7 no ring-redundancy dna-redundancy

Description

With this command, you disable Dual Network Access redundancy (DNA redundancy) on the device.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ring-redundancy dna-redundancy
```

Result

DNA Redundancy is disabled.

Additional notes

You enable DNA Redundancy with the `ring-redundancy dna-redundancy` command.

You display the current configuration of the ring redundancy with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.5.8 ring-redundancy standby

Description

With this command, you enable the standby function.

Requirement

- HRP is enabled
- You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ring-redundancy standby
```

Result

The standby function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no ring-redundancy standby` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy`command.

9.4.5.9 no ring-redundancy standby

Description

With this command, you disable the standby function.

Requirement

- HRP is enabled
- You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ring-redundancy standby
```

Result

The standby function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the setting with the `ring-redundancy standby` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy`command.

9.4.6 Commands in the redundancy configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Redundancy Configuration mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `ring-redundancy configuration` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the Redundancy Configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global Configuration mode.
- If you exit the Redundancy Configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in redundancy configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.4.6.1 linkcheck

Description

With this command, you enable the Link Check function on a ring port and you can reset the function.

Note

Enable Link Check on only one of two connection partners. This can lead to incorrect behavior.

Note

If Link Check is enabled on all devices of a ring at the same time, and several connections within the ring have problems, this leads to fragmentation of the ring.

1. During commissioning enable the Link Check function for one connection section after the other by enabling Link Check for the two connection partners connected to a line.
2. To ensure an error-free connection, wait 1 min. before you enable Link Check for the next connection section.

Requirement

- You can only enable the Link Check function with optical ring ports of an HRP or MRP ring.
- Link Check must be enabled on two neighboring devices (connection partners) within an HRP or MRP ring.
- The ring ports on which you enable Link Check must be connected together.
- You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config-red)#`

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
linkcheck {<interface-type> <interface-id>} [reset]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`reset`	After resetting Link Check, the function is restarted on the port and the statistics are reset. If you use the `reset` parameter, the reset must be performed on both connection partners within 30 s.	When you use the `reset` parameter, loops can form temporarily resulting in a loss of data traffic. The loop is automatically cleared again. If this is not acceptable for your application, reset Link Check by pulling the connecting cable and plugging it in again.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

Link Check is activated on the port.

Additional notes

You disable the function with the `no linkcheck` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show linkcheck` command.

With the `event config` command, you can configure so that you are informed of a status change by a message.

9.4.6.2 no linkcheck

Description

With this command, you disable the Link Check function on a port.

Requirement

You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no linkcheck {<interface-type> <interface-id>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

Link Check is deactivated on the port.

Further notes

You enable the function and reset the count with the `linkcheck` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show linkcheck` command.

9.4.6.3 ring ports

Description

With this command, you configure the ports of the ring redundancy manager or ring redundancy client on a device.

- **Redundancy manager**
  - In the normal status, the network structure is operated via port. The other port is only used by the ring redundancy manager for checking.
  - If there is a disruption, the two parts of the ring operate via both ports.
- **Redundancy client**
  - The client forwards all frames of the redundancy manager to the ring ports.

Requirement

- The ports are disabled in spanning tree.
- You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config-red)#`

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
ring ports {<interface-type> <interface-id>} {<interface-type>
<interface-id>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`interface-type`	Specifies the interface type for the first ring port.
`interface-id`	Specifies the number of the interface for the first ring port.
`interface-type`	Specifies the interface type for the second ring port.
`interface-id`	Specifies the number of the interface for the second ring port.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Note

Differing port addresses

The first and second port must be configured on different interfaces.

H-Sync

H-Sync is a Layer 2 protocol with which process data is synchronized via PROFINET in systems with redundant control.

The two controllers are connected redundantly via an MRP ring. The controllers must be directly connected with one another on a path. Both controllers are configured as "MRP Auto-Manager", so one of the controllers becomes MRP manager. All other devices in the ring are MRP clients. The two controllers send H-Sync frames in both directions of the ring (Provider). H-Sync frames that they receive are not forwarded (Consumer). All other devices in the ring only forward the H-Sync frames between their ring ports in both directions (Forwarder). The H-Sync frames are filtered on all other ports.

H-Sync is a transparent protocol for the IE switches. For information on which IE switches can be used as H-Sync forwarder, refer to the section "System functions and hardware equipment".

You only configure H-Sync via STEP 7 Basic or Professional. However, note that settings deviating from the following rules can result in complications in configuration:

- Redundancy mode: MRP client
- Ring ports:
  - Use the ring ports preset in the factory.
  - Use the first two optical interfaces.
  - Use the first two gigabit interfaces.
  - Use Port 1 and Port 2.

Result

The ports of the ring redundancy are configured.

9.4.6.4 standby connection-name

Description

With this command, you assign a name to the standby connection on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
standby connection-name <string(32)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
<string(32)>	Name of the connection	max. 32 characters

Result

The standby connection is assigned a name.

9.4.6.5 no standby connection-name

Description

With this command, you delete the name of a standby connection.

Requirement

You are in the Redundancy Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no standby connection-name
```

Result

The name of the standby connection is deleted.

9.4.6.6 standby force-master

Description

With this command, you assign the role of standby master to the device, if the standby partner has not already been configured as master.

Requirement

- HRPis enabed
- You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config-red)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
standby force-master
```

Result

The standby force-master function is enabled.

Additional notes

You disable the setting with the `no standby force-master` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.6.7 no standby force-master

Description

With this command, you disable the standby force-master function.

Requirement

- HRPis enabed
- You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config-red)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no standby force-master
```

Result

The standby force-master function is disabled.

Additional notes

You enable the setting with the `standby force-master` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.6.8 standby port

Description

With this command, you configure and enable the port for a standby connection on a device.

Requirement

- The ports are disabled in spanning tree.
- You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config-red)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
standby port {<interface-type> <interface-id>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The port for a standby connection is configured and enabled.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no standby port` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.6.9 no standby port

Description

With this command, disable the port for a standby connection on a device.

Requirement

You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no standby port {<interface-type><interface-id>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The ports for a standby connection are disabled.

Further notes

You enable the setting with the `standby port` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.6.10 standby wait-for-partner

Description

With this command, you enable the "Wait for standby partner" function on the device. A standby connection is enabled only after the standby master and the standby slave as well as their standby partners have established a connection. This ensures that the redundant connection is really available before communication via a standby connection is enabled. As default, this function is enabled.

With an optional parameter, you can also define a specific period for the timeout. In this case, the standby connection is only enabled after the defined wait time.

Requirement

You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
standby wait-for-partner [timeout <milliseconds(1-60000)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`timeout`	Keyword for the timeout	-
`milliseconds`	Duration of the timeout in milliseconds	1 ... 60000

Result

The "Wait for standby partner" function is enabled.

9.4.6.11 no standby wait-for-partner

Description

With this command, you disable the "Wait for standby partner" function on the device. A standby connection is enabled even if the standby master has not yet established a connection to the standby slave.

Requirement

You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no standby wait-for-partner
```

Result

The "Wait for standby partner" function is disabled.

9.4.6.12 mrpinterconnection

Description

With this command, you create or change an MRP Interconnection connection. At the same time, you switch to MRP Interconnection configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mrpinterconnection <table entry index (1-64)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`table entry index`	Index of an existing connection or one that has to be newly created in the MRP Interconnection table.	1 ... 64

Result

A new MRP Interconnection connection was created if a connection with the specified index did not exist yet. You are in the MRP Interconnection configuration mode. The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red-mrpin-<idx>)#
```

The placeholder <idx> stands for the index of the table entry, for example, the command prompt for the index 2 is `cli(config-red-mrpin-2)#`.

9.4.6.13 no mrpinterconnection

Description

With this command, you delete an MRP Interconnection connection.

Requirement

You are in the Redundancy configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mrpinterconnection <table entry index (1-64)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`table entry index`	Index of an existing connection in the MRP Interconnection table.	1 ... 64

Result

The MRP Interconnection connection with the specified index was deleted.

9.4.7 Commands in MRP Interconnection configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the MRP Interconnection configuration mode.

In redundancy configuration mode, enter the `mrpinterconnection <table entry index (1-64)>` command to change to this mode. The parameter `table entry index (1-64)` stands for the index of an existing connection or one that has to be newly created in the MRP Interconnection table.

- If you exit the MRP Interconnection configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Redundancy configuration mode.
- If you exit the Redundancy configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in MRP Interconnection configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.4.7.1 domain-id

Description

With this command, you configure the ID of an MRP Interconnection connection. When specifying the ID, observe the following rules:

- The Interconnection domain ID cannot be 0.
- You need to configure the same Interconnection Domain ID for all four devices used for linking the rings.

Requirement

You are in the MRP Interconnection configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red-mrpin-<idx>)#
```

The placeholder `<idx>` stands for the index of a connection in the MRP Interconnection table.

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
domain-id <interconnection-id (1-65535)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`interconnection-id`	The ID of an MRP Interconnection connection.	1 ... 65535

Result

The MRP Interconnection connection was assigned the specified ID.

Additional notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.7.2 domain-name

Description

With this command, you configure the name of an MRP Interconnection connection. You can specify any name. The names of the devices used for linking the rings can also be different.

Requirement

You are in the MRP Interconnection configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-red-mrpin-<idx>)#`

The placeholder `<idx>` stands for the index of a connection in the MRP Interconnection table.

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`domain-name <interconnection-domain-name (240)>`

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`interconnection-domain-name`	The name of an MRP Interconnection connection.	Permitted characters: • 'A' ... 'Z' • 'a' ... 'z' • '0' ... '9' • The character '-', but not as first or last character. Length: 1 to 240 characters

Result

The MRP Interconnection connection was assigned the specified name.

Additional notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.7.3 Interface

Description

With this command, you configure the port for the MRP Interconnection connection. Be aware of the following restrictions:

- The port cannot be disabled or blocked. The "Unicast Blocking" function cannot be enabled for the port.
- The port cannot be used for a link aggregation.
- The port cannot be a monitor port of the "Mirroring" function.
- The port cannot be a Spanning Tree port.
- The port cannot be a ring port.

- The port cannot be a router port.
- The port must be a member of the VLAN with the Agent VLAN ID.
- The port cannot be an 802.1X Authenticator Port.
- The port cannot be an 802.1X Supplicant Port.

Requirement

You are in the MRP Interconnection configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-red-mrpin-<idx>)#`

The placeholder `<idx>` stands for the index of a connection in the MRP Interconnection table.

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`interface {<interface-type> <interface-id>}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameters	Description	Range of values/note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The MRP Interconnection connection was assigned the specified interface.

Additional notes

You display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.7.4 role

Description

With this command, you configure whether the device has the role of the client or the manager for an MRP Interconnection connection.

Requirement

You are in the MRP Interconnection configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-red-mrpin-<idx>)#`

The placeholder `<idx>` stands for the index of a connection in the MRP Interconnection table.

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`role {manager | client}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`manager`	Keyword for the "Manager" role	-
`client`	Keyword for the "Client" role	-

Result

The MRP Interconnection connection was assigned the specified role.

Additional notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.7.5 client-position

Description

With this command, you configure the client position of an MRP Interconnection connection.

Requirement

You are in the MRP Interconnection configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-red-mrpin-<idx>)#`

The placeholder `<idx>` stands for the index of a connection in the MRP Interconnection table.

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`client-position {primary | secondary}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`primary`	Keyword for the "Primary" client position	In each ring, there is a client in the "Primary" position. The primary MRP Interconnection connection is established between these two clients.
`secondary`	Keyword for the "Secondary" client position	A device in the "Secondary" position is connected via an MRP Interconnection connection to the MRP Interconnection Manager.

Result

The MRP Interconnection connection was assigned the specified client position.

Additional notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.7.6 wait-manager

Description

With this command, you specify that the MRP Interconnection Manager waits with data transfer until the primary client for MRP Interconnection is ready.

Requirement

You are in the MRP Interconnection configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-red-mrpin-<idx>)#
```

The placeholder `<idx>` stands for the index of a connection in the MRP Interconnection table.

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
wait-manager
```

Result

The waiting time for completion of the configuration is enabled.

Additional notes

You disable the waiting time for completion of the configuration with the `no wait-manager` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.7.7 no wait-manager

Description

With this command, you specify that the MRP Interconnection interface is put into the "Forwarding" state after 200 milliseconds regardless of the operating state of the primary client.

Requirement

You are in the MRP Interconnection configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-red-mrpin-<idx>)#`

The placeholder `<idx>` stands for the index of a connection in the MRP Interconnection table.

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

`no wait-manager`

Result

The waiting time for completion of the configuration is disabled.

Additional notes

You enable the waiting time for completion of the configuration with the `no wait-for-completion` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.4.7.8 Interconnection

Description

With this command, you enable or disable the MRP Interconnection connection.

Requirement

You are in the MRP Interconnection configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config-red-mrpin-<idx>)#`

The placeholder `<idx>` stands for the index of a connection in the MRP Interconnection table.

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`interconnection {enable | disable}`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameters	Description	Range of values/note
`enable`	Enables the MRP Interconnection connection.	-
`disable`	Disables the MRP Interconnection connection.	-

Result

The MRP Interconnection connection was enabled or disabled.

Additional notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show ring-redundancy` command.

9.5 Unicast

The commands in this section configure the procedures for handling Unicast frames.

The commands allow the following:

- Filtering of Unicast frames
- Blocking of ports
- Automatic learning of Unicast
- Blocking unknown Unicast frames.

With the "show" commands, you can display the configuration data.

With the following commands, note which "Base bridge mode" you are in. If you are in the "Transparent Bridge" mode, all settings relate to the management VLAN: VLAN 1.

You change the mode with the `base bridge-mode` command.

9.5.1 The "show" commands VLAN bridge)

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.5.1.1 show mac-address-table

Description

This command shows the table with the static and dynamic unicast MAC addresses and multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table [vlan <vlan-range>] [address
<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>] [interface <interface-type> <interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN or VLAN range	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN or VLAN range	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen or a space.
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries of the MAC addresses table are displayed.

9.5.1.2 show mac-address-table dynamic unicast

Description

This command shows the table with the dynamic unicast MAC addresses assigned by the device.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table dynamic unicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
     [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>][{interface<interface-type>
     <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen without spaces.
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The dynamic unicast MAC addresses are displayed.

9.5.1.3 show mac-address-table static unicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static unicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table static unicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
  [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>][{interface<interface-type><interface-
id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen without spaces.
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static unicast MAC addresses are displayed.

9.5.1.4 show unicast-block config

Description

This command shows the unicast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show unicast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a port description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of interfaces and addresses, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The unicast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

9.5.1.5 show unicast-mac flush config

Description

This command shows whether automatic deletion of the MAC address table in the event of a link-down is configured for a port. If you do not specify any interface name as parameter, the settings for all ports are displayed.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
show unicast-mac flush config [port <interface-type> <interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`port`	Keyword for a port description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of interfaces and addresses, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The settings of the ports for deleting the MAC address table are displayed.

9.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode (VLAN bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.5.2.1 mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static unicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
  vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
  interface ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
             [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c,...>]
             [port-channel <interface-list>])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel connection	Enter a valid port channel connection.
`interface-list`	Number of the addressed port channel	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static unicast` command, you delete an entry.

9.5.2.2 no mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static unicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
   vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static unicast` command, you create an entry.

9.5.3 The "show" commands (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.5.3.1 show dot1d mac-address-table

Description

This command shows the table with the static and dynamic unicast entries and the dynamic multicast entries.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table [address <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
     [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	Specify a valid MAC address.
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries are displayed.

9.5.3.2 show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static unicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast [address
<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
     [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static unicast MAC addresses are displayed.

9.5.3.3 show unicast-block config

Description

This command shows the unicast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show unicast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a port description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of interfaces and addresses, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The unicast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

9.5.3.4 show unicast-mac flush config

Description

This command shows whether automatic deletion of the MAC address table in the event of a link-down is configured for a port. If you do not specify any interface name as parameter, the settings for all ports are displayed.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command with the following parameters:

```
show unicast-mac flush config [port <interface-type> <interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`port`	Keyword for a port description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of interfaces and addresses, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The settings of the ports for deleting the MAC address table are displayed.

9.5.4 Commands in the global configuration mode (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.5.4.1 mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static unicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
    interface ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
               [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c,...>]
               [port-channel <interface-list>])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel connection	Enter a valid port channel connection.
`interface-list`	Number of the addressed port channel	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static unicast` command, you delete an entry.

9.5.4.2 no mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static unicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static unicast` command, you create an entry.

9.6 Multicast

The commands in this section configure the procedures for handling Multicast frames.

The commands allow the following:

- Configuration of groups
- IGMP
- Blocking unknown Multicast frames.

With the "show" commands, you can display the configuration data.

With the following commands, note which "Base bridge mode" you are in. If you are in the "Transparent Bridge" mode, all settings relate to the management VLAN: VLAN 1.

You change the mode with the `base bridge-mode` command.

9.6.1 The "show" commands VLAN bridge)

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.6.1.1 show mac-address-table

Description

This command shows the table with the static and dynamic unicast MAC addresses and multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table [vlan <vlan-range>] [address
<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>] [interface <interface-type> <interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN or VLAN range	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN or VLAN range	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen or a space.
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries of the MAC addresses table are displayed.

9.6.1.2 show mac-address-table dynamic multicast

Description

This command shows the table with the dynamic multicast MAC addresses assigned by the device.

Note

The device does not learn any reserved multicast addresses, see also RFC 5771.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table dynamic multicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
     [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
     [{interface<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen without spaces.
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The dynamic multicast MAC addresses are displayed.

9.6.1.3 show mac-address-table static multicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show mac-address-table static multicast[vlan<vlan-range>]
  [address<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>][{interface<interface-type><interface-
id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-range`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094 Enter the range limits with a hyphen without spaces.
`address`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static multicast MAC addresses are displayed.

9.6.1.4 show multicast-block config

Description

This command shows the multicast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show multicast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a port description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If no parameters are specified, the settings for all ports are displayed.

Result

The multicast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

9.6.2 Commands in the global configuration mode (VLAN bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.6.2.1 mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static multicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
    vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>
    interface([<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
              [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
              [port-channel<1-8>])
   [forbidden-ports([<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
```

```
                                [<interface-type><0/ab,0/c, ...>]
                                [port-channel <1-8>]])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`0/a-b, 0/c,...`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Specifies the name of a port channel	1-8
`forbidden-ports`	Keyword for the interface description of the blocked ports	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static multicast` command, you delete an entry.

9.6.2.2 no mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static multicast address.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa> vlan <vlan-
id(1-4094)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The "static multicast" function is disabled.

9.6.3 The "show" commands (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.6.3.1 show dot1d mac-address-table

Description

This command shows the table with the static and dynamic unicast entries and the dynamic multicast entries.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table [address <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
     [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
address	Keyword for a MAC address	-
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address	Specify a valid MAC address.
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries are displayed.

9.6.3.2 show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast

Description

This command shows the table with the static multicast MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast [address
<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
     [{interface <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
address	Keyword for a MAC address	-
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address	-
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The static multicast MAC addresses are displayed.

9.6.3.3 show multicast-block config

Description

This command shows the multicast blocking settings for ports.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show multicast-block config [port <interface-type> <interface-id)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a port description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If no parameters are specified, the settings for all ports are displayed.

Result

The multicast blocking settings for ports are displayed.

9.6.4 Commands in the global configuration mode (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

9.6.4.1 mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static multicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
    interface ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
               [<interface-type> <interface-id>]
               [port-channel <1-8>]])
   [forbidden-ports ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
                     [<interface-type> <interface-id>]
                     [port-channel <1-8>]])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Specifies the name of a port channel	1-8
`forbidden-ports`	Keyword for the interface description of the blocked ports	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static multicast` command, you delete an entry.

9.6.4.2 no mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static multicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static multicast` command, you create an entry.

Layer 3 functions

10

10.1 NAT

Note

NAT/NATP is a layer 3 function and can only be used with IPv4.

When using the ISO protocol that operates at layer 2, it is not possible to use NAT.

With Network Address Translation (NAT), IP subnets are divided into "Inside" and "Outside". The division is from the perspective of a NAT interface. All networks that can be reached via the NAT interface itself count as being "Outside" for this interface. All networks that csn be reached via IP interfaces of the same device count as being "Inside" for the NAT interface.

if there is routing via a NAT interface, the source or destination IP addresses of the transferred data packets are changed at the transition between "Inside" and "Outside". Whether the source or destination IP address is changed depends on the communication direction. The address of the communications node located "Inside" is always adapted. Depending on the perspective the IP address of the communications node is identified as "Local" or "Global".

		Perspective	
		Local	Global
Position	Inside	An actual IP address that is assigned to a device in the internal network. This address cannot be reached from the external network.	An IP address at which an internal device can be reached from the external network.
	Outside	An actual IP address that is assigned to a device in the external network. Since only "inside" addresses are implemented, there is no distinction between made between outside local and outside global.	

Computing capacity

Due to the load limitation of the CPU packet receipt of the device is limited to 300 packets a second. This corresponds to a maximum data through of 1.7 Mbps. This load limitation does not apply per interface but generally for all packets going the CPU.

The entire NAT communication runs via the CPU and therefore represents competition for IP communication going to the CPU, e.g. WBM and Telnet.

Note that a large part of the computing capacity is occupied if you use NAT.

NAT

With Network Address Translation (NAT), the IP address in a data packet is replaced by another. NAT is normally used on a gateway between an internal network ("Inside") and an external network ("Outside").

With source NAT, the inside local source address of an IP packet from a device in the internal network is rewritten to an inside global address by a NAT device at the network transition.

With destination NAT, the inside global destination address of an IP packet from a device in the external network is rewritten by a NAT device to an inside local address at the gateway.

To translate the internal into the external IP address and back, the NAT device maintains a translation list. The address assignment can be dynamic or static.

NAPT

In Network Address Port Translation (NAPT), several internal IP addresses are translated into the same external IP address. To identify the individual nodes, the port of the internal device is also stored in the translation list of the NAT device and translated for the external address.

If several internal devices send a query to the same external destination IP address via the NAT device, the NAT device enters its own external source IP address in the header of these forwarded frames. Since the forwarded frames have the same external source IP address, the NAT device assigns the frames to the devices using a different port number.

If a device from the external network wants to use a service in the internal network, the translation list for the static address assignment needs to be configured.

NAT/NAPT and IP routing

You can enable NAT/NAPT and IP routing at the same time. In this case, you need to regulate the reachability of internal addresses from external networks with IP access lists (ACL).

10.1.1 The "show" commands

10.1.1.1 show ip nat config

Description

This command shows the global NAT/NAPT configuration.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
show ip nat config
```

Result

The global NAT configuration is displayed.

Further notes

You enable NAT/NAPT for the entire device with the `ip nat` command in the Global configuration mode.

You disable NAT/NAPT for the entire device with the `no ip nat` command in the Global configuration mode.

You delete the periods of time with the `ip nat timeout` command.

You can reset the time periods to the default with the `ip nat timeout` command.

10.1.1.2 show ip nat service

Description

This command shows static port translations (NAPT) for an interface with a service.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
show ip nat service
```

Result

The information is displayed.

Further notes

You configure static port translations for an interface with the `ip nat service` command.

You delete a configuration with the `no ip nat service` command.

10.1.1.3 show ip nat service portrange

Description

This command shows static port translations (NAPT) for an interface with a port range.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
show ip nat service portrange
```

Result

The selected service, start and end port of an interface are displayed.

Further notes

You configure static port translations for an interface with a port range with the `ip nat service portrange` command.

You delete a configuration with the `no ip nat service portrange` command.

10.1.1.4 show ip nat summary

Description

This command shows the NAT/NAPT configuration of the interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
show ip nat summary
```

Result

The current NAT/NAPT configuration of the interfaces is displayed.

Further notes

You enable NAT for the selected IP interface with the `ip nat` command in the Interface configuration mode.

You disable NAT for the selected IP interface with the `no ip nat` command in the Interface configuration mode.

You enable NAPT for the selected IP interface with the `ip nat napt` command in the Interface configuration mode.

You disable NAPT for the selected IP interface with the `no ip nat napt` command in the Interface configuration mode.

10.1.1.5 show ip nat

Description

This command shows address translations or active connections depending on the selected parameter.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show ip nat { interface | static | translations}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Shows the configuration of the dynamic address translations.	-
`static`	Shows the configuration of the static 1:1 address translations.	-
`translations`	Displays the active NAT connections.	-

Result

The configured address translations or active connections are displayed.

Further notes

You configure a static address translation with the `ip nat static` command.

You delete a static address translation with the `no ip nat static` command.

You configure a dynamic address translation with the `ip nat pool` command.

You delete a dynamic address translation with the `no ip nat pool` command.

10.1.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

10.1.2.1 ip nat

Description

With this command you enable NAT/NAPT for the entire device.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip nat
```

Result

NAT/NAPT is enabled globally for the entire device. The device operates as a NAT router.

Further notes

You disable NAT/NAPT for the entire device with the `no ip nat` command.

You display the current configuration with the command.

10.1.2.2 no ip nat

Description

With this command you disable NAT/NAPT for the entire device.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip nat
```

Result

NAT/NAPT is disabled globally for the entire device.

Further notes

You enable NAT/NAPT for the entire device with the `ip nat` command.

You display the current configuration with the command.

10.1.2.3 ip nat timeout

Description

With this command you define periods of time after which existing connections are deleted if there is no data exchange.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip nat {idle timeout <seconds (60-86400)> | {tcp | udp } timeout
<seconds (300-86400)>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`idle timeout`	Keyword for the time after which a xxxx connection is deleted	-
`seconds`	Value for the time in seconds	For the parameter `idle`: • 60 ... 86400 For the parameter `udp`: • 300 ... 86400
`tcp`	Keyword for the time after which a TCP connection is deleted	-
`udp`	Keyword for the time after which a UDP connection is deleted	-

Result

The time periods are defined.

Further notes

You can reset the time periods to the default with the `ip nat timeout` command.

You display the current configuration with the command.

10.1.2.4 no ip nat timeout

Description

With this command you reset periods of time after which existing connections are deleted back to the default value.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip nat {idle | {tcp | udp } timeout
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
idle	Keyword for the time period of a xxxx connection	-
tcp	Keyword for the time period of a TCP connection	-
udp	Keyword for the time period of a UDP connection	-

Result

The time periods are reset.

Further notes

You delete the periods of time with the `ip nat timeout` command.

You display the current configuration with the command.

10.1.3 Commands in the Interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

10.1.3.1 ip nat

Description

With this command, you enable NAT for the IP interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
ip nat
```

Result

NAT is activated for the IP interface.

Further notes

You disable NAT for the selected IP interface with the `no ip nat` command.

You display the current configuration with the `show ip nat summary` command.

10.1.3.2 no ip nat

Description

With this command, you disable NAT for the selected IP interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ip nat
```

Result

NAT is deactivated for the selected IP interface.

Further notes

You enable NAT for the selected IP interface with the `ip nat` command.

You display the current configuration with the `show ip nat summary` command.

10.1.3.3 ip nat napt

Description

With this command, you enable NAPT for the selected IP interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
ip nat napt
```

Result

NAPT is activated for the selected IP interface.

Further notes

You disable NAPT for the selected IP interface with the `no ip nat napt` command.

You display the current configuration with the `show ip nat summary` command.

10.1.3.4 no ip nat napt

Description

With this command, you disable NAPT for the selected IP interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no ip nat napt
```

Result

NAPT is deactivated for the selected IP interface.

Further notes

You enable NAPT for the selected IP interface with the `ip nat napt` command.

You display the current configuration with the `show ip nat summary` command.

10.1.3.5 ip nat pool

Description

With this command, you configure a pool for dynamic address translations.

As default, the device cannot be reached from an external network. If the device wants to communicate in an external network, an inside global address is assigned to it dynamically. Using this inside global address, the device can be reached from the external network until the timer of the connection elapses.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip nat pool <inside global ip> <mask>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`inside global ip`	Start address for the dynamic assignment of addresses at which devices will be reachable from external.	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
`mask`	Address mask of the external subnet	Enter a valid subnet mask.

Result

A pool is defined.

Further notes

You delete a dynamic address translation with the `no ip nat pool` command.

You display the current configuration with the `show ip nat` command.

10.1.3.6 no ip nat pool

Description

With this command, you delete a pool for dynamic address translations.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip nat pool <inside global ip>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`inside global ip`	Start address for the dynamic assignment of addresses at which devices are reachable from external.	Enter a valid IPv4 address.

Result

A pool is deleted.

Further notes

You configure a dynamic address translation with the `ip nat pool` command.

You display the current configuration with the `show ip nat` command.

10.1.3.7 ip nat service

Description

With this command you configure static port translations (NAPT) for an interface with a service.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip nat service <inside local ip> [<inside local port number>]
     { auth | dns | ftp | pop3 | pptp | smtp | telnet | http | nntp |
snmp | other [<inside global port number>]}
     [{ tcp | udp | any }] [<description>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`inside local ip`	Actual address of the device that should be reachable from external.	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
`inside local port number`	Port that will be assigned to the inside local address.	If you do not specify any ports, the port that you assign for the `inside global port number` parameter will be entered.
Service	Service for which the port translation is valid.	• `auth` • `dns` • `ftp` • `pop3` • `pptp` • `smtp` • `telnet` • `http` • `nntp` • `snmp` • `other`
`inside global port number`	Port that will be assigned to the inside global address.	If you have selected the `other` service, you can enter a port. If you have selected another service, a port will be specified.
Protocol	Protocol for which the port translation is valid.	• `tcp` • `udp` • `any`
`description`	Description for the port translation	-

Result

The static port translation with a service is configured.

Further notes

You delete a configuration with the `no ip nat service` command.

You configure static port translations for an interface with a port range with the `ip nat service portrange` command.

You display the current configuration with the `show ip nat service` command.

10.1.3.8 no ip nat service

Description

With this command you delete static port translations (NAPT) for an interface with a service.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip nat service {{<inside local ip> <inside local port number>
[{ tcp | udp | any }]} | all}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`inside local ip`	Actual address of the device that is reachable from external.	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
`inside local port number`	Port that is assigned to the inside local address.	-
Protocol	Protocol for which the port translation is valid.	• `tcp` • `udp` • `any`
`all`	Deletes all port translations	-

Result

The static port translation with a service is deleted.

Further notes

You configure static port translations with a service for an interface with the `ip nat service` command.

You configure static port translations for an interface with a port range with the `ip nat service portrange` command.

You display the current configuration with the `show ip nat service` command.

10.1.3.9 ip nat service portrange

Description

With this command you configure static port translations (NAPT) for an interface with a port range.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip nat service portrange <inside local ip> {tcp|udp|any} <inside
local start port no> <inside local end port no> [<description>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`inside local ip`	Actual address of the device that should be reachable from external.	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
Protocol	Protocol for which the port translation is valid.	• `tcp` • `udp` • `any`
`inside local start port no`	Start port that will be assigned to the inside local address.	The port range you define will also be used for the port of the inside global address. A port range can only be translated to the same port range.
`inside local end port no`	End port that will be assigned to the inside local address.	
`description`	Description for the port translation	-

Result

The static port translation with a port range is configured.

Further notes

You delete a configuration with the `no ip nat service portrange` command.

You configure static port translations with a service for an interface with the `ip nat service` command.

You display the current configuration with the `show ip nat service portrange` command.

10.1.3.10 no ip nat service portrange

Description

With this command you delete static port translations (NAPT) for an interface with a port range.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip nat service portrange <inside local ip> {tcp|udp|any} <inside
local start port no> <inside local end port no>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`inside local ip`	Actual address of the device that is reachable from external.	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
Protocol	Protocol for which the port translation is valid.	• `tcp` • `udp` • `any`
`inside local start port no`	Start port that is assigned to the inside local address.	-
`inside local end port no`	End port that is assigned to the inside local address.	-

Result

The static port translation with a port range is deleted.

Further notes

You configure static port translations for an interface with a port range with the `ip nat service portrange` command.

You configure static port translations with a service for an interface with the `ip nat service` command.

You display the current configuration with the `show ip nat service portrange` command.

10.1.3.11 ip nat static

Description

With this command, you configure static 1:1 address translations.

You specify which inside global address the inside local address of a device will be converted to and vice versa. This variant allows connection establishment in both directions. The device in the internal network can be reached from the external network.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
ip nat static <inside local ip> <inside global ip>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`inside local ip`	Actual address of the device that should be reachable from external.	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
`inside global ip`	Address at which the device will be reachable from external	Enter a valid IPv4 address.

Result

A static address translation is defined.

Further notes

You delete a static address translation with the `no ip nat static` command.

You display the current configuration with the `show ip nat` command.

10.1.3.12 no ip nat static

Description

With this command, you delete static 1:1 address translations.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no ip nat static <inside local ip>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`inside local ip`	Actual address of the device that is reachable from external.	Enter a valid IPv4 address.

Result

A static address translation is deleted.

Further notes

You configure a static address translation with the `ip nat static` command.

You display the current configuration with the `show ip nat` command.

10.2 Single-Hop Inter-VLAN-Routing

Introduction

A physical network is divided into broadcast domains and subnets by VLANs.

Devices (hosts) within a VLAN can communicate with each other directly via layer 2. The frames are forwarded to the relevant device based on the MAC address.

Devices from different VLANs cannot communicate with each other directly via layer 2. The data traffic must be routed based on the IP address.

With the Single-Hop Inter-VLAN-Routing function it is possible that devices from different VLANs communicate with each other without a router being necessary.

Requirements

- The IE switch can manage several IP interfaces.
- The switch is a member in the VLANs to be routed.
- With the hosts, the IP address of the VLAN is entered as default gateway.

Single-Hop Inter-VLAN-Routing

The IE switch receives a frame and recognizes that it is addressed to a device in another VLAN. It forwards the frame to the corresponding port in the VLAN.

The IE switch only knows VLANs with which it is directly connected (Connected). With Single-Hop Inter-VLAN-Routing it is therefore only possible to route between two local IP interfaces.

10.2.1 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

10.2.1.1 ip single-hop inter-vlan-routing

Description

With this command, you enable the Single-Hop Inter-VLAN-Routing function.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
ip single-hop inter-vlan-routing
```

Result

The function is enabled. The device can route between two local IP interfaces.

Further notes

You disable the Single-Hop Inter-VLAN-Routing function with the `no ip single-hop inter-vlan-routing` command.

10.2.1.2 no ip single-hop inter-vlan-routing

Description

With this command, you enable the Single-Hop Inter-VLAN-Routing function.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no ip single-hop inter-vlan-routing
```

Result

The function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the Single-Hop Inter-VLAN-Routing function with the `ip single-hop inter-vlan-routing` command.

Load control

11

This part contains the sections describing the functions for controlling and balancing network load.

11.1 Rate control

This section describes commands for controlling and restricting the data transmission rate of an interface.

11.1.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

11.1.1.1 show rate-limit output

Description

This command shows the packet rate for limiting the outgoing data stream of one or all interfaces.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show rate-limit output[interface<interface-type><interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the entries are displayed for all available interfaces.

Result

The entries are displayed.

11.1.2 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

11.1.2.1 rate-limit output

Description

With this command, you configure and enable the data rate in Kbps for limiting the outgoing data stream of the interface.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
rate-limit output <rate-value>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`rate-value`	Value for the data rate in Kbps	Default: The data rate is set to 0. The outgoing data stream is not limited.

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The limitation of the outgoing data stream of the interface with the data rate is enabled.

Additional notes

You disable the function with the `no rate-limit output` command.

11.1.2.2 no rate-limit output

Description

With this command, you disable the data rate for limiting the outgoing data stream of the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no rate-limit output
```

Result

The limitation of the outgoing data stream of the interface with the data rate is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `rate-limit output` command.

11.1.2.3 storm-control

Description

With this command, you enable data rate for limiting the incoming data stream of the interface for broadcast, multicast or unknown unicast packets.

Note

Applications

Storm control is only supported on physical interfaces.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
storm-control{broadcast | multicast | dlf | unicast}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`broadcast`	Limits broadcast packets
`multicast`	Limits multicast packets
`dlf`	Limits unicast packets with unresolvable addresses (dfl = destination lookup fail)
`unicast`	Limits unicast packets with resolvable addresses

As default the function is "disabled" for all transfer types.

Note

Configuration of the threshold value

The default value for the storm control level is 0 Kbps. The incoming data stream is not limited.

To have the incoming data stream limited, configure the threshold value with the `storm-control level` command.

Result

The storm control function is enabled.

Additional notes

You disable the function with the `no storm-control` command.

You configure the threshold value for the storm control function with the `storm-control level` command.

11.1.2.4 no storm-control

Description

With this command, you disable the storm control function for broadcast, multicast or unknown unicast packets.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no storm-control{broadcast | multicast | dlf | unicast}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`broadcast`	Disables broadcast storm control
`multicast`	Disables multicast storm control
`dlf`	Disables unknown unicast storm control
`unicast`	Disables unicast storm control

if you call up the function without parameters, it is disabled for all types of transmission.

Result

The storm control function is disabled.

Additional notes

You enable the function with the `storm-control` command.

11.1.2.5 storm-control level

Description

With this command, you configure the value for the storm control function in Kbps.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
storm-control level <rate-value>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`rate-value`	Value for the data rate in Kbps	The value range depends on the port speed. The entry is rounded down to the next valid value. If small values are entered, the value is rounded up to the next valid value. Default: The data rate is set to 0. The incoming data stream is not limited.

Result

The value for the storm control function is configured.

Additional notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no storm-control level` command.

11.1.2.6 no storm-control level

Description

With this command, you reset the value for the storm control function to the default value.

The default value for the storm control level is 0 Kbps. The incoming data stream is not limited.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no storm-control level
```

Result

The value for the storm control function is reset to the default.

Additional notes

You configure the value for the storm control function with the `storm-control level` command.

11.2 Static MAC filtering

11.2.1 network-filtering

Description

With this command, you block frames from devices (MAC address) that could lead to an overload of the switch CPU in the PROFINET environment. Processing and forwarding of these frames is blocked for a maximum of 1 second. The aim is to have enough resources available for AR maintenance.

Note

This command is available only with the following devices:

- SCALANCE XR-300 WG
- Devices without gigabit ports
- Devices without combo ports

Only enable this function when AR failures lead to an overload of the switch CPU in the PROFINET environment.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
network-filtering {enabled | disabled}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`enabled`	Overload protection for the switch CPU is enabled. In the event of an overload, data traffic from specific MAC addresses is blocked.	-
`disabled`	Overload protection is disabled. The data traffic is not limited.	-

Result

The function for limiting data traffic is configured.

11.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode (VLAN bridge)

With the following commands, note which "Base bridge mode" you are in. If you are in the "Transparent Bridge" mode, all settings relate to the management VLAN: VLAN 1.

You change the mode with the `base bridge-mode` command.

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

11.2.2.1 mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static multicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
    vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>
    interface([<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
              [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
              [port-channel<1-8>]])
   [forbidden-ports([<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
                    [<interface-type><0/ab,0/c, ...>]
                    [port-channel <1-8>]])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`0/a-b, 0/c,...`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Specifies the name of a port channel	1-8
`forbidden-ports`	Keyword for the interface description of the blocked ports	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static multicast` command, you delete an entry.

11.2.2.2 no mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static multicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static multicast<aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
      vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`vlan`	Keyword for the number of a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static multicast` command, you create an entry.

11.2.2.3 mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static unicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
  vlan <vlan-id(1-4094)>
  interface ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
             [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c,...>]
             [port-channel <interface-list>])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address of the interface	-
vlan	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
vlan-id	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
port-channel	Keyword for a port channel connection	Enter a valid port channel connection.
interface-list	Number of the addressed port channel	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static unicast` command, you delete an entry.

11.2.2.4 no mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static unicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
   vlan<vlan-id(1-4094)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	-
`vlan-id`	Number of the addressed VLAN	1 ... 4094

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static unicast` command, you create an entry.

11.2.3 Commands in the global configuration mode (Transparent Bridge)

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

11.2.3.1 mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static multicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
    interface ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
               [<interface-type> <interface-id>]
               [port-channel <1-8>]])
   [forbidden-ports ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
                     [<interface-type> <interface-id>]
                     [port-channel <1-8>]])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Specifies the name of a port channel	1-8
`forbidden-ports`	Keyword for the interface description of the blocked ports	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static multicast` command, you delete an entry.

11.2.3.2 no mac-address-table static multicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static multicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static multicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static multicast` command, you create an entry.

11.2.3.3 mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you generate a static unicast MAC address entry in the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
    interface ([<interface-type> <interface-id>]
               [<interface-type> <0/a-b, 0/c,...>]
               [port-channel <interface-list>])
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	-
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel connection	Enter a valid port channel connection.
`interface-list`	Number of the addressed port channel	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The entry in the forwarding database is generated.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `no mac-address-table static unicast` command, you delete an entry.

11.2.3.4 no mac-address-table static unicast

Description

With this command, you delete a static unicast MAC address entry from the forwarding database.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no mac-address-table static unicast <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa	MAC address of the interface	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The entry is deleted from the forwarding database.

Further notes

With the `show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast` command, you display the list of configured entries.

With the `mac-address-table static unicast` command, you create an entry.

11.2.4 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

11.2.4.1 switchport ingress-filter

Description

With incoming packets, the ingress filter checks whether the port on which the packet was received belongs to the sending VLAN. If this is not the case, the packet is not processed.

With this command, you enable the ingress filter.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
switchport ingress-filter
```

Result

The ingress filter is activated.

Further notes

You disable the filter with the `no switchport ingress-filter` command.

You can display the status of the ingress filter and other settings with the `show vlan port config` command.

11.2.4.2 no switchport ingress-filter

Description

With this command, you disable the ingress filter.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no switchport ingress-filter
```

Result

The ingress filter is deactivated.

Further notes

You enable the filter with the `switchport ingress-filter` command.

You can display the status of the ingress filter and other settings with the `show vlan port config` command.

11.3 Dynamic MAC aging

The section describes commands with which the aging of dynamically learned entries is configured in a MAC address list.

11.3.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

11.3.1.1 show mac-address-table aging-time

Description

To ensure that the address entries are up-to-date, MAC addresses are only kept in the address table for a specified time.

This command shows the time after which the MAC addresses are removed from the address table.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show mac-address-table aging-time
```

Result

The time is displayed.

11.3.1.2 show mac-address-table aging-status

Description

This command shows whether or not MAC aging is enabled.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show mac-address-table aging-status
```

Result

The status of the MAC aging is displayed.

11.3.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

11.3.2.1 mac-address-table aging-time

Description

With this command, you configure the aging of a dynamically learned entry in the MAC address list.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
mac-address-table aging-time <seconds(15-630)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`seconds`	Life of the entry in seconds	15 ... 630 Default: 300 Enter the period of time in seconds in steps of 15. When you input the Aging Time, note that the WBM rounds to correct values. If you enter a value that cannot be divided by 15, the value is automatically rounded down.

Result

The value of the aging of a dynamically learned entry is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the setting to the default with the `no mac-address-table aging-time` command.

You display the setting with the `show mac-address-table aging-time` command.

11.3.2.2 no mac-address-table aging-time

Description

With this command, you reset the value for the aging of a dynamically learned entry in the MAC address list to the default value.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no mac-address-table aging-time
```

Result

The value of the aging of a dynamically learned entry is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the setting with the `mac-address-table aging-time` command.

You display the setting with the `show mac-address-table aging-time` command.

11.3.2.3 mac-address-table aging

Description

With this command, you enable the "Aging" function. The "Aging" function ensures that an entry in the MAC address list that was learned dynamically is deleted again after a certain time.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
mac-address-table aging
```

Result

The "Aging" function is enabled.

Further notes

You configure the time with the `mac-address-table aging-time` command.

You disable the "Aging" function with the `no mac-address-table aging` command.

11.3.2.4 no mac-address-table aging

Description

With this command, you disable the "Aging" function.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no mac-address-table aging
```

Result

The "Aging" function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the "Aging" function with the `mac-address-table aging` command.

11.4 Flow control

The flow control function monitors the incoming data traffic of a port. If there is overload ("Congestion", "Overflow") it sends a signal to the connection partner. If the flow control function receives a signal at the sending end, it stops the data transmission to avoid loss of data.

This section describes commands of the flow control function.

11.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

11.4.1.1 show flow-control

Description

This command shows the settings of the flow control function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show flow-control [interface <interface-type><interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the information for the router will be displayed.

Result

The settings of the flow control function are displayed.

11.4.2 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

11.4.2.1 flowcontrol

Description

The flow control function monitors a connection at the receiving end to make sure that not more data is received than can be processed. If flow control detects a threat of data overflow, the partner at the sending end is sent a signal to stop transmitting.

With this command, you configure the flow control function for an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
flowcontrol {on|off}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`on`	Enables the function	You can only enable or disable flow control when the "Auto negotiation" function is turned off. Afterwards you can enable "Auto negotiation" again. To use the flow control function, enable flow control at the appropriate input and output ports. If a packet is sent from an input port with flow control enabled to an output port with flow control enabled, the packet is not discarded if there is overflow. If flow control is enabled only on the input port, the packet can be discarded if there is overload.
`off`	Disables the function	-

Result

The settings for the flow control function are configured.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function with the `show flow-control` command.

You disable "Auto negotiation" with the `no negotiation` command.

You enable "Auto negotiation" with the `negotiation` command.

11.5 Service classes

This section describes commands for configuring the assignment tables for service classes and the Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP).

11.5.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

11.5.1.1 show qos agent-priority

Description

This command shows the current priority of agent frames.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show qos agent-priority
```

Result

The current priority of the agent frames is displayed.

Further notes

You configure the priority of agent frames with the `agent-priority` command.

11.5.1.2 show qos broadcast-priority

Description

This command shows the current priority of broadcast frames.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show qos broadcast-priority
```

Result

The current priority of the broadcast frames is displayed.

Further notes

You configure the priority of broadcast frames with the `broadcast-priority` command.

11.5.1.3 show qos cos-map

Description

This command shows the assignment table of CoS priorities to queues.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show qos cos-map
```

Result

The assignment table of CoS priorities to queues is displayed.

Further notes

You configure the assignment of the CoS priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

11.5.1.4 show qos cos-remap

Description

For individual ports, this command shows the priority with which frames are sent.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show qos cos-remap
```

Result

The assignment table for send priority is displayed.

Further notes

You enable the the Cos reassignment with the `cos-remap-enable` command.

You change the priority with which frames are sent `cos-remap`command.

11.5.1.5 show qos dscp-map

Description

This command shows the assignment table of DSCP priorities to queues.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show qos dscp-map
```

Result

The assignment table of DSCP priorities to queues is displayed.

Further notes

You configure the assignment of the DSCP priority to a queue with the `dscp-map` command.

11.5.1.6 show qos scheduling mode

Description

This command shows the method with which the processing order of the frames is decided.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show qos scheduling mode
```

Result

The method with which the frames are processed is displayed.

Further notes

You configure the method for deciding the processing order with the `scheduling mode` command.

11.5.1.7 show qos-trust-mode

Description

This command shows port by port the method according to which packets to be forwarded are prioritized.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show qos-trust-mode
```

Result

The list for all ports with the corresponding Trust mode is displayed.

11.5.2 Commands in the Global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

11.5.2.1 qos

Description

With this command, you change to the QOS configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
qos
```

Result

You are now in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Further notes

You exit the QOS configuration modewith the command `end` or `exit`.

11.5.3 Commands in the QOS configuration mode

Quality of Service (QoS)

Quality of Service (QoS) is a method to allow efficient use of the existing bandwidth in a network.

QoS is implemented by prioritization of the data traffic. Incoming frames are sorted into a Queue according to a certain prioritization and further processed. This gives certain frames priority.

The different QoS methods influence each other and are therefore taken into account in the following order:

1. The switch first checks whether the incoming frame is a broadcast or agent frame.
   → When the first condition is met, the switch takes into account the set priority with the `agent-priority` or `broadcast-priority` command..
   The switch sorts the frame into a queue according to the the `cos-map` command.
2. If the first condition is not met the switch checks whether the frame contains a VLAN tag.
   → If the second condition is met, the switch checks whether the priority is enabled (`priority-enable`).
   If priority is enabled, the switch sorts the frame into a queue according to the the `cos-map` command.
3. If the second condition is also not met the frames are further processed according to the Trust mode. You configure the trust mode with the `qos-trust-mode` command.

Commands in this section

This section describes commands that you can call up in the QOS configuration mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `qos` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the QOS configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the QOS configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in QOS configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

11.5.3.1 agent-priority

Description

With this command you specify the priority of agent frames. The switch sorts incoming frames into a queue according to this prioritization .

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
agent-priority <integer (0-7)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`integer`	Value of the priority	0 … 7

Result

The priority of agent frames is configured.

Further notes

You reset the priority of agent frames to the default value with the `no agent-priority` command.

You display the current priority of agent frames with the `show qos agent-priority` command.

You configure the assignment of the CoS priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

11.5.3.2 no agent-priority

Description

With this command, you reset the priority of agent frames back to the default value.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no agent-priority
```

Result

The priority of agent frames has been reset to the default value.

Further notes

You change the priority of agent frames with the `agent-priority` command.

You display the current priority of agent frames with the `show qos agent-priority` command.

You configure the assignment of the CoS priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

11.5.3.3 broadcast-priority

Description

With this command you specify the priority of broadcast frames. The switch sorts incoming frames into a queue according to this prioritization .

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
broadcast-priority <integer (0-7)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`integer`	Value of the priority	0 … 7

Result

The priority of broadcast frames is configured.

Further notes

You reset the priority of broadcast frames to the default value with the `no broadcast-priority` command.

You display the current priority of broadcast frames with the `show qos broadcast-priority` command.

You configure the assignment of the CoS priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

11.5.3.4 no broadcast-priority

Description

With this command, you reset the priority of broadcast frames back to the default value.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
broadcast-priority
```

Result

The priority of broadcast frames has been reset to the default value.

Further notes

You change the priority of broadcast frames with the `broadcast-priority` command.

You display the current priority of broadcast frames with the `show qos broadcast-priority` command.

You configure the assignment of the CoS priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

11.5.3.5 cos-map

Description

With this command, you configure the assignment of CoS priorities to queues.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
cos-map <cos(0-7)> queue <queue(1-4)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`cos`	Priority	0 … 7 Default: 1
`queue`	Keyword for a queue	-
`queue`	Queue to which this priority is assigned	1 … 4/8 *) Default: 2

*) Depending on the device.

The CoS priorities are assigned to the queues as follows in the default setting:

COS	Devices with 4 queues	Devices with 8 queues
0	Queue 2	Queue 2
1	Queue 1	Queue 1
2	Queue 1	Queue 3
3	Queue 2	Queue 4
4	Queue 3	Queue 5
5	Queue 3	Queue 6
6	Queue 4	Queue 7
7	Queue 4	Queue 8

Result

The assignment table for service classes is configured.

Further notes

You display the current assignment table of CoS priorities to queues with the `show qos cos-map` command.

11.5.3.6 cos-remap

Description

With this command depending on the priority when receiving a frame, you can change the priority with which it is sent.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
cos-remap interface <interface-type><interface-id> <prio (0-7)>
<remapped prio (0-7)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`prio`	Priority with which a frame is received.	0 … 7
`remapped prio`	Priority with which a frame will be sent	0 … 7

Result

The send priority has been changed.

Further notes

You reset the send priority to the default value with the `no cos-remap` command.

You enable the CoS reassignment with the `cos-remap-enable` command.

You disable the the CoS reassignment with the `no cos-remap-enable` command.

You display the assignment table for the send priority with the `show qos cos-remap` command.

11.5.3.7 no cos-remap

Description

With this command, you reset the send priority back to the default value.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no cos-remap
```

Result

The send priorities are reset to the default value.

Further notes

You change the send priority depending on the priority when receiving a frame with the `cos-remap` command.

You enable the the CoS reassignment with the `cos-remap-enable` command.

You disable the the CoS reassignment with the `no cos-remap-enable` command.

You display the assignment table for the send priority with the `show qos cos-remap` command.

11.5.3.8 cos-remap-enable

Description

With this command, you enable the CoS reassignment function. Depending on the priority when receiving a frame, you can change the priority with which it is sent.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
cos-remap-enable
```

Result

The CoS reassignment function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no cos-remap-enable` command.

You change the priority with which frames are sent with the `cos-remap` command.

You reset the send priority to the default value with the `no cos-remap` command.

You display the assignment table for the send priority with the `show qos cos-remap` command.

11.5.3.9 no cos-remap-enable

Description

With this command, you disable the CoS reassignment function.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no cos-remap-enable
```

Result

The CoS reassignment function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `cos-remap-enable` command.

You change the priority with which frames are sent with the `cos-remap` command.

You reset the send priority to the default value with the `no cos-remap` command.

You display the assignment table for the send priority with the `show qos cos-remap` command.

11.5.3.10 dscp-map

Description

With this command, you configure the assignment of DSCP priorities to queues.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dscp-map {<dscp (0-63)> | range <dscp (0-63)> - <dscp (0-63)>} queue
<queue(1-8)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`dscp`	Priority	0 … 63
`range`	Keyword for a range of DSCP codes	-
`queue`	Keyword for a queue	-
`queue`	Queue to which this priority is assigned	1 … 4/8 *)

*) Depending on the device.

The DSCP priorities are assigned to the queues as follows in the default setting:

DSCP codes	Devices with 4 queues
0 - 15	Queue 1
16 - 31	Queue 2
32 - 47	Queue 3
48 - 63	Queue 4

DSCP codes	Devices with 8 queues
0 - 7	Queue 2
8 - 15	Queue 1
16 - 23	Queue 3
24 - 31	Queue 4
32 - 39	Queue 5

DSCP codes	Devices with 8 queues
40 - 47	Queue 6
48 - 55	Queue 7
56 - 63	Queue 8

Result

The assignment table for DSCP codes is configured.

Further notes

You display the current assignment table of DSCP priorities to queues with the `show qos dscp-map` command.

11.5.3.11 qos-trust-mode

Description

With this command you can set the method according to which frames to be forwarded are prioritized port by port.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
qos-trust-mode interface {<interface-type> <interface-id > | range
<interface-type> <interface-id > - <interface-type> <interface-id >}
{untrust | cos | dscp | cos-dscp}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`range`	Keyword for a range of interfaces	-
`untrust`	The switch sorts the incoming frames into a queue according to the prioritization of the receiving port. If there is a DSCP value in the IP header, this is ignored. If a VLAN tag exists, it is replaced by the priority value of the receiving port.	-

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`cos`	If an incoming frame contains a VLAN tag, the switch sorts it into a queue according to this prioritization. If the frame does not contain a VLAN tag, the switch sorts the frame into a queue according to the prioritization of the receiving port. If there is a DSCP value in the IP header, this is ignored.	Default setting with PROFINET variants
`dscp`	If an incoming frame contains a DSCP prioritization, the switch sorts it into a queue according to this prioritization. If the frame does not contain a DSCP prioritization, the switch sorts the frame into a queue according to the prioritization of the receiving port. If the frame contains a VLAN tag, this is ignored.	Default setting with EtherNet/IP variants
`cos-dscp`	With an incoming frame, there is a sequential check of which prioritization it contains. If it contains a DSCP prioritization, it is handled as in the "Trust DSCP" mode. If it contains no DSCP prioritization, the switch checks whether it contains a VLAN tag. If it contains a VLAN tag, the switch sorts it into a queue according to this prioritization. If the frame contains neither a DSCP prioritization nor a VLAN tag, the switch sorts the frame into a queue according to the prioritization of the receiving port.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The prioritization for forwarding frames is configured.

Further notes

You configure the assignment of the CoS priority to a queue with the `cos-map` command.

You configure the assignment of the DSCP priority to a queue with the `dscp-map` command.

You configure the prioritization of the receiving port with the `switchport priority default` command.

11.5.3.12 scheduling mode

Description

With this command, you can specify the order in which the frames in the forwarding queues are sent. The higher the queue number, the higher the send priority.

Requirement

You are in the QOS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-qos)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
scheduling mode <strict | weighted>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`strict`	As long as there are frames with high priority in the queue, only these high-priority frames are processed.	-
`weighted`	Even if there are frames with high priority in the queue, frames with a lower priority will be processed occasionally.	-

Result

The method for the processing order of the frames is specified.

Further notes

You display the method for the processing order of the frames with the `show qos scheduling mode` command.

Security and authentication

12

This part contains the sections that describe the access rights and authentication methods.

12.1 User management

This section describes commands for access as administrator and the configuration of the authentication methods.

12.1.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

12.1.1.1 show password-policy

Description

This command shows which password policy is currently being used.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show password-policy
```

Result

The currently valid password policy is displayed.

Further notes

You configure the password policy with the `password-policy` command.

12.1.1.2 show users

Description

This command shows the logged-in CLI users.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show users
```

Result

The logged-in CLI users are displayed.

12.1.1.3 show user-accounts

Description

This command shows the created users.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show user-accounts
```

Result

The created users are shown.

12.1.2 change password

Description

With this command, you change the password of the logged in user.

Requirement

- You are logged into the device with a local user account
- You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
change password <passwd>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`passwd`	Value for the password	Enter the password. The entry depends on the password policy. The `show password-policy` command shows which password policy is currently being used.

Result

The password is changed.

Note
Changing the password in Trial mode

Even if you change the password in Trial mode, this change is saved immediately.

Further notes

You create a user with the `user-account` command.

You delete a user with the `no user-account` command.

You show the created users with the `show user-accounts` command.

You configure the password policy with the `password-policy` command.

12.1.3 whoami

Description

This command shows the user name of the logged in user.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
whoami
```

Result

The user name of the logged in user is displayed.

12.1.4 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

12.1.4.1 password-policy

Description

With this command, you specify which password policy will be used when assigning new passwords.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
password-policy < low | high >
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
low	Password policy: Low	Password length: at least 6 characters
high	Password policy: High	Password length: at least 8 characters: At least 1 uppercase letter At least 1 special character At least 1 number

Result

The password policy is specified:

Further notes

You assign a new password with the `user-account` command.

You display the setting with the `show password-policy` command.

12.1.4.2 user-account

Description

With this command, you specify a new user. You can also change the password and the role of an already created user.

Requirement

The user is logged in with the "admin" role.

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
user-account <user-name> password <user-password> role {user-role}
[description <user-description>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`user-name`	User name	Enter a user name. The name must meet the following conditions: • It must be unique. • It must be between 1 and 32 characters long. • The following characters must not be included: § ? " ; : < =
`password`	Keyword for a password	-
`user-password`	Value for the password	Enter the password. The strength of the password depends on the set password policy: • `low`: Password length: at least 6 characters, maximum 32 characters • `high`: The password must meet the following conditions: – Password length: at least 8 characters, maximum 32 characters – At least 1 uppercase letter – At least 1 special character – At least 1 number
`role`	Keyword for the role of the user	-
`user-role`	The user role	The following user roles exist: • `user` The user only has read rights. • `admin` The user can create, edit or delete entries.
`description`	Keyword for information on the user.	-
`user-description`	Information on the user.	Maximum of 100 characters.

Result

The new user has been created or the password/role has been changed.

Note

Changes in "Trial" mode

Even if the device is in "Trial" mode, changes that you carry out with this command are saved immediately.

Note

User name cannot be changed

After creating a user, the user name can no longer be modified because the user name is used for encryption of the password. If a user name needs to be changed, the user must be deleted and a new user created.

Additional notes

You delete a user with the `no user-account` command.

You show the created users with the `show user-accounts` command.

12.1.4.3 no user-account

Description

With this command, you delete a user.

Note

Default users "admin" as well as logged in users cannot be deleted.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no user-account <user-name>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
user-name	User name	Enter a valid user name.

Result

The user has been deleted.

Further notes

You create a user with the `user-account` command.

You show the created users with the `show user-accounts` command.

12.1.4.4 user-account-ext

Description

With this command you link a user with a role in the table "External User Accounts". The user is defined on RADIUS server. The roll is defined locally on the device.

When a RADIUS server authenticates a user, the corresponding group however is unknown or does not exist, the device checks whether or not there is an entry for the user in the table "External User Accounts". If an entry exists, the user is logged in with the rights of the associated role. If the corresponding group is known on the device, both tables are evaluated. The user is assigned the role with the higher rights.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
user-account-ext <user-name-ext> role <user-role-ext> [description
<user-ext-description>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`user-account-ext`	Keyword for a user in the table "External User Accounts"	-
`user-name-ext`	User name	Enter the name for the user. The name must meet the following conditions: • It must be unique. • It must be between 1 and 250 characters long.
`role`	Keyword for the role name	-
`user-role-ext`	Role name	Enter a role. You can choose between system-defined and self-defined roles.

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`description`	Keyword for the description	-
`user-ext-description`	Content of the description	Enter a description for the user in the table "External User Accounts". The description text can be up to 100 characters long.

Result

A link in the table "External User Accounts" has been created.

Note

User name cannot be changed

After creating a user, the user name can no longer be modified. If a user name needs to be changed, the user must be deleted and a new user created.

Further notes

You delete a link with the `no user-account-ext` command.

You show the links in the table "External User Accounts" with the `show user-accounts external` command.

12.1.4.5 no user-account-ext

Description

With this command, you delete the link between a user and a role in the table "External User Accounts".

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no user-account-ext <user-name-ext>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`user-name-ext`	User name	Enter the name of a user.

Result

The link in the table "External User Accounts" has been deleted.

Further notes

You link a user with a role in the table "External User Accounts" with the `user-account-ext` command.

You show the links in the table "External User Accounts" with the `show user-accounts external` command.

12.1.4.6 role

Description

With this command, you create roles that are valid locally on the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
role <role-name> function-rights <function-rights-value(1-15)>
[description <role-description>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`role-name`	Role name	Enter a name for the role. The name must meet the following conditions: • It must be unique. • It must be between 1 and 64 characters long. • The following characters must not be included: § ? " ;
`function-rights`	Keyword for the function rights	-

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`function-rights-value`	Value of the function rights	Select the function rights of the role. • 1 Users with this role can read device parameters but cannot change them. • 15 Users with this role can both read and change device parameters.
`description`	Keyword for the description	-
`role-description`	Content of the description	Enter a description for the role. The description text can be up to 100 characters long.

Result

The role is created.

Note

Role name cannot be changed

After creating a role, the name of the role can no longer be changed.

If a name of a role needs to be changed, the role must be deleted and a new role created.

Note

Function rights changeable with restrictions

You can only change the function rights of a role when the role is no longer linked to a user.

Further notes

You delete a role with the `no role` command.

You show the created roles with the `show roles` command.

12.1.4.7 no role

Description

With this command, you delete a role.

Note

You can only delete a role when the role is not linked to a user.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no role <role-name>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`role-name`	Role name	Enter the name of a role.

Result

The role is deleted.

Further notes

You create a role with the `role` command.

You show the created roles with the `show roles` command.

12.1.4.8 user-group

Description

With this command you link a group with a role.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
user-group <user-group-name> role <role-name> [description <user-
group-description>]
```

Note

The character strings for `user-group-name`, `role-name` and `user-group-description` must meet the following conditions:

- The character string must be unique.
- The character string must not include the following characters: | § ? " ; :
- The character string must not include Extended ASCII Codes (characters > 0x7F).
- When the character string contains spaces, the entire characters string must be set in quotation marks.

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`user-group`	Keyword for a group name	-
`user-group-name`	Group name	Enter the name of the group. The name must match the group on the RADIUS server. The name must meet the following conditions: • It must be unique. • It must be between 1 and 64 characters long.
`role`	Keyword for the role name	-
`role-name`	Role name	Enter a role name. Users who are authorized with the linked group on the RADIUS server receive the rights of this role locally on the device. You can choose between system-defined and self-defined roles.
`description`	Keyword for the description	-
`user-group-description`	Content of the description	Enter a description for the link. The description text can be up to 100 characters long.

Result

The group is linked to a role.

Further notes

You delete a link with the `no user-group` command.

You show the created links with the `show user-groups` command.

12.1.4.9 no user-group

Description

With this command, you delete the link between a group and a role.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no user-group <user-group-name>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`user-group-name`	Group name	Enter the name of a group.

Result

The link is deleted.

Further notes

You link a group with a role with the `user-group` command.

You show the created links with the `show user-groups` command.

12.1.4.10 username

Description

With this command, you change the password for users with the user name "`user`" or "`admin`".

Requirement

- The user is logged in with the "admin" role.
- You are in global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is as follows:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

`username {user|admin} password <passwd>`

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`user`	User with the "`user`" user name.	If you have created a user with the user name "`user`", you can change the password for this user with this command.
`admin`	User with the "`admin`" user name.	If you have not renamed the "`admin`" user preset in the factory, you can change the password for this user with this command.
`password`	Keyword for a password	-
`passwd`	Value for the password	Enter the password. The password must meet the following conditions: • It must be unique. • The following characters must not be included: | § ? " ; : • It must not include Extended ASCII Codes (characters > 0x7F). • When the password contains spaces, the entire character string must be set in quotation marks. The strength of the password depends on the set password policy: • `low`: Password length: at least 6 characters • `high`: The password must meet the following conditions: – Password length: at least 8 characters – at least 1 uppercase letter – at least 1 special character – at least 1 number

Result

The password is changed.

Note

Changing the password in Trial mode

Even if you change the password in Trial mode, this change is saved immediately.

Further notes

You show the created users with the `show user-accounts` command.

You can also change the passwords with the `user-account` command.

You display the currently valid password policy with the `show password-policy` command.

12.2 RADIUS client

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) is a client/server protocol that allows the centralized login of users logging in in a physical or virtual network. This makes central administration of user data possible.

This section describes commands relevant for the configuration of this service.

12.2.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

12.2.1.1 show radius statistics

Description

This command shows the connection statistics from the RADIUS client to the RADIUS server.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show radius statistics
```

Result

The connection statistics are displayed.

12.2.1.2 show radius server

Description

This command shows the RADIUS server configuration.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show radius server [<ucast_addr>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
ucast_addr	Value for an IPv4 unicast address	Enter a valid unicast address

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If no parameters are specified, all configured RADIUS servers are displayed.

Result

The RADIUS server configuration is displayed.

12.2.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

12.2.2.1 login authentication

Description

With this command, you enable authentication via a RADIUS server.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
login authentication {radius | local-and-radius | radius-fallback-local}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`radius`	The login is via a RADIUS server.	-
`local-and-radius`	The login is possible both with the users that exist in the firmware (user name and password) and via a RADIUS server.	The local users have priority. The user is first searched for in the local database. If the user does not exist there, a RADIUS query is sent.
`radius-fallback-local`	The authentication must be handled via a RADIUS server.	A local authentication is performed only when the RADIUS server cannot be reached in the network.

Result

The authentication is made according to the selected parameter.

Further notes

You disable the authentication via a RADIUS server with the `no login authentication` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show device information` command.

12.2.2.2 no login authentication

Description

With this command, you disable authentication via a RADIUS server.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no login authentication
```

Result

The RADIUS authentication is deactivated.

Note

The login is possible only with a local user name and password. If the local logon fails, there is no authentication via a RADIUS server.

Further notes

You enable the authentication via a RADIUS server with the `login authentication` command.

12.2.2.3 radius authorization-mode

Description

With this command you specify for the login authentication how the rights are assigned to the user with a successful authentication.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
radius authorization-mode { standard | vendor-specific }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`standard`	In this mode the user is logged in with administrator rights if the server returns the value "Administrative User" to the device for the attribute "Service Type". In all other cases the user is logged in with read rights.	Default
`vendor-specific`	In this mode, the assignment of rights depends on whether and which group the server returns for the user and whether or not there is an entry for the user in the table "External User Accounts".	-

Result

The assignment of rights during the login authentication is defined.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show device information` command.

12.2.2.4 radius disconnect-packet

Description

With this command, you enable the evaluation of Disconnect messages of the RADIUS server.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
radius disconnect-packet
```

Result

The device evaluates the Disconnect messages of the RADIUS server.

Additional notes

You show the configuration of a RADIUS server on the client with the `show radius server` command.

12.2.2.5 no radius disconnect-packet

Description

With this command, you disable the evaluation of Disconnect messages of the RADIUS server.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no radius disconnect-packet
```

Result

The device does not evaluate Disconnect messages of the RADIUS server.

Additional notes

You show the configuration of a RADIUS server on the client with the `show radius server` command.

12.2.2.6 radius-server

Description

With this command, you configure a RADIUS server entry on the RADIUS client.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
radius-server ipv4 <ipv4-address> [auth-port <portno(1-65535)>]
[retransmit <1-254>][key <secret-key-string>][primary] [{login |
dot1x | login-dot1x}] [test]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address.	-
`ipv4-address`	Value for the IPv4 address of the RADIUS server	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
`auth-port`	Keyword for the UDP port number for authentication	-
`portno`	Number of the port	1 … 65535 Default: 1812
`retransmit`	Keyword for the number of connection retries	-
`<1-254>`	Maximum number of connection retries	1 ... 254 Default: 3
`key`	Keyword for the key for communication between the authenticator and the server	-
`secret-key-string`	Value for the key	46 characters Default: empty string
`primary`	Identifies the RADIUS server as primary server	-
`login`	The server is used only for the login authentication.	-
`dot1x`	The server is used only for the 802.1X authentication.	-
`login-dot1x`	The server is used for both authentication procedures.	Default setting
`test`	Tests whether or not the specified RADIUS server is available. At the same time you can create a new RADIUS server and run the test.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring, the default values apply.

Note

Primary server

In a network, only one RADIUS server can be selected as the primary server.

If you select a RADIUS server as the primary server, this replaces the server that previously had the role of primary server.

Result

The entry for a connection between the RADIUS client and a server or the identification as primary server is configured.

Further notes

You delete a RADIUS server entry with the `no radius-server` command.

You show the configuration of a RADIUS server on the client with the `show radius server` command.

You show the statistical information of this function with the `show radius statistics` command.

12.2.2.7 no radius-server

Description

With this command, you delete a RADIUS server entry on the client.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no radius-server ipv4 <ipv4-address> [primary]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IPv4 address.	-
`ipv4-address`	Value for the IPv4 address of the RADIUS server	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
`primary`	Identifies the RADIUS server as primary server	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The entry for a connection between the RADIUS client and a server or the identification as primary server is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the connection of a RADIUS client to a server with the `radius-server` command.

You show the configuration of a RADIUS server on the client with the `show radius server` command.

You show the statistical information of this function with the `show radius statistics` command.

12.3 Management Access Control List

This section describes the commands relevant for working with the management access control list.

12.3.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

12.3.1.1 show authorized-managers

Description

This command shows the information about the configuration of the authorized managers.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show authorized-managers[ip-source<ip-address>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ip-source`	Keyword for the network or host address	-
`ip-address`	Value for an IP address	specify a valid IP address

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The information about the configuration of the authorized managers is displayed.

12.3.2 Commands in the Global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

12.3.2.1 authorized-manager

Description

With this command, the Management ACL is enabled.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
authorized-manager
```

Result

The Management ACL is enabled.

Additional notes

You disable the function with the `no authorized-manager` command.

12.3.2.2 no authorized-manager

Description

With this command, the Management ACL is disabled.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no authorized-manager
```

Result

The Management ACL is disabled.

Additional notes

You enable the function with the `authorized-manager` command.

12.3.2.3 authorized-manager ip-source

Description

With this command, you configure the interfaces and protocols via which an authorized manager is allowed to access the device.

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
authorized-manager ip-source <ip-address>
   [{<subnet-mask>|/<prefix-length(0-32)>}]
   [interface[<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]
             [<interface-type><0/a-b,0/c,...>]]
   [vlan<a,b or a-b or a,b,c-d>]
   [service[snmp][telnet][http][https][ssh]]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`ip-address`	Specifies the network or the IP address for which the IP manager is authorized	Enter a valid IPv4 address or a network.
`subnet-mask`	Subnet mask that restricts the authorization	Enter a valid mask.
`prefix-length`	Decimal representation of the mask as a number of "1" bits	0 ... 32
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`0/a-b,0/c,...`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`vlan`	Keyword for a VLAN connection	• In the "VLAN Bridge" mode Enter a valid VLAN or VLAN range. • In the "Transparent Bridge" mode: The configurations relating to VLANs are ignored. The rules apply to all VLANs. If you have defined certain VLANs with a firmware version < 1.2, the configuration of the VLANs will be replaced during a firmware update with the default value "1-4094".
`a,b or a-b or a,b,c-d`	Number of a VLAN or VLAN range	
`service`	Specifies the services for which the manager is authorized. You can select several options.	• `snmp` • `telnet` • `http` • `https` • `ssh`

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

The IP address 0.0.0.0 means "any manager".

If optional parameters are not specified when configuring, the manager is authorized for all services.

Note

Configuration of the first entry

As long as the list of authorized managers is empty, access to the system is not restricted.

As soon as the list contains an entry and the "authorized-manager" command is executed, access to the system is blocked for all others.

You should therefore configure the interface via which you access the system first because your access is otherwise blocked.

Result

The interfaces and protocols via which an authorized manager is allowed to access the device are configured.

Note

No restrictions for console port

The restrictions do not apply to the serial console (console port).

Further notes

You delete an interface for access of an authorized manager with the `no authorized-manager ip-source` command.

You show the information about the configuration of the authorized managers with the `show authorized-manager` command.

You change the mode with the `base bridge-mode` command.

12.3.2.4 no authorized-manager ip-source

Description

With this command, you delete an interface via which an authorized manager is allowed to access the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no authorized-manager ip-source <ip-address>
   [{<subnet-mask>|/<prefix-length(0-32)>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ip-address`	Specifies the network or the IP address for which the IP manager is authorized	Enter a valid IP address or a network
`subnet-mask`	Subnet mask that restricts the authorization	Enter a valid mask
`prefix-length`	Decimal representation of the mask as a number of "1" bits	0 ... 32

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

An authorized manager is deleted from the list.

Further notes

You configure the interfaces and protocols via which an authorized manager is allowed to access the device with the `authorized-manager ip-source` command.

You show the information about the configuration of the authorized managers with the `show authorized-manager` command.

12.4 Port Access Control List Locked Ports

With the Port Access Control List Locked Ports functionality, MAC addresses that do not age are collected on a port after the `start` command. With the `stop` command, these addresses are converted to static entries in the address list and the aging is reactivated for all the addresses that follow.

If the learning of addresses on this port is then disabled, data packets are only forwarded to the static addresses entered in the table.

This section describes commands relevant for the configuration of this function.

12.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

12.4.1.1 show lock port

Description

This command shows whether or not the learning of MAC entries is enabled or locked on an interface.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show lock port [<interface-type><interface-id>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select an interface, the configuration of all interfaces is displayed.

Result

The configuration of the interface for the learning of MAC entries is displayed.

12.4.2 Commands in the Global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

12.4.2.1 clear-all-static-unicast

Description

With this command, you delete all static unicast MAC address entries from the MAC address table.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear-all-static-unicast
```

Result

The static unicast MAC address entries are deleted from the MAC address table.

12.4.2.2 auto-learn

Description

With this command, you change to the AUTOLEARN mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
auto-learn
```

Result

You are now in the AUTOLEARN mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-auto-learn)#
```

Further notes

You exit the AUTOLEARN configuration modewith the command `end` or `exit`.

12.4.3 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

12.4.3.1 switchport lock

Description

With this command, you block the learning of MAC entries. Only the static address entries of the MAC address list are used on the port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
switchport lock
```

Result

The learning of MAC addresses is blocked.

Further notes

You enable the learning of MAC addresses with the `no switchport lock` command.

You display the configuration with the `show lock port` command.

12.4.3.2 no switchport lock

Description

With this command, you enable the learning of MAC addresses.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no switchport lock
```

Result

The learning of MAC addresses is enabled.

Further notes

You block the learning of MAC addresses with the `switchport lock` command.

You display the configuration with the `show lock port` command.

12.4.4 Commands in the AUTOLEARN mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the AUTOLEARN mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `auto-learn` command to change to this mode.

- If you exit the AUTOLEARN mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the AUTOLEARN mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in AUTOLEARN mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

12.4.4.1 start

Description

With this command, you start automatic learning. During automatic learning, the aging timer is disabled for all learned addresses.

Requirement

You are in the AUTOLEARN mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-auto-learn)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
start
```

Result

The learned MAC addresses are entered in the "port database" with the aging time 0. (The entries are NOT deleted when the "MAC Address Aging Time" expires).

Further notes

You stop automatic learning with the `stop` command.

12.4.4.2 stop

Description

With this command, you stop automatic learning and convert all learned MAC addresses to static entries.

Requirement

You are in the AUTOLEARN mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-auto-learn)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
stop
```

Result

Automatic learning is stopped and all learned entries are converted to static entries.

Further notes

You start automatic learning with the `start` command.

12.5 Port Based Network Access Control

This section describes commands for working with port-based network access control (PNAC).

12.5.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

12.5.1.1 show dot1x

Description

This command shows information about port-based network access control (PNAC).

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show dot1x[{interface<interface-type><interface-id>|
     statistics interface<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`statistics interface`	Keyword for the display of the statistical data of the dot1x Authenticator for an interface	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The dot1x information is displayed.

12.5.1.2 show dot1x guest-vlan mac-info

Description

This command displays which MAC address and which port are assigned to a guest VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show dot1x guest-vlan mac-info
```

Result

A list with guest VLAN, MAC address and port is displayed.

12.5.1.3 show dot1x mac-auth mac-info

Description

This command shows the MAC addresses for which MAC authentication is enabled.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show dot1x mac-auth mac-info
```

Result

A list of the MAC addresses is displayed.

12.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

12.5.2.1 dot1x guest-vlan

Description

With this command, you enable the guest VLAN function for the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
dot1x guest-vlan
```

Result

The guest VLAN function is enabled for the device.

Further notes

You also still need to enable the guest VLAN function for every port intended to use this function. You do this with the `dot1x guest-vlan` command in the Interface configuration mode.

You disable the function with the `no dot1x guest-vlan.` command

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.2.2 no dot1x guest-vlan

Description

With this command, you disable the guest VLAN function for the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x guest-vlan
```

Result

The guest VLAN function is disabled for the device.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `dot1x guest-vlan.` command

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.2.3 dot1x mac-auth

Description

With this command, you enable MAC authentication for the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
dot1x mac-auth
```

Result

MAC authentication is enabled for the device.

Further notes

You also still need to enable MAC authentication for every port intended to use this function. You do this with the `dot1x mac-auth` command in the Interface configuration mode.

You disable the function with the `no dot1x mac-auth` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.2.4 no dot1x mac-auth

Description

With this command, you disable MAC authentication for the device.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x mac-auth
```

Result

MAC authentication is disabled for the device.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `dot1x mac-auth` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.3 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

12.5.3.1 dot1x guest-vlan

Description

With this command, you enable the guest VLAN function for a port.

This function is also known as "Authentication failed VLAN".

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
dot1x guest-vlan
```

Result

The guest VLAN function is enabled for a port.

Further notes

You also need to enable the guest VLAN function for the device. You do this with the `dot1x guest-vlan` command in the Global configuration mode.

You disable the function with the `no dot1x guest-vlan` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.3.2 no dot1x guest-vlan

Description

With this command, you disable the guest VLAN function for a port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x guest-vlan
```

Result

The guest VLAN function is disabled for a port.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `dot1x guest-vlan` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.3.3 dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id

Description

With this command, you configure a guest VLAN for a port.

The port can only be assigned to the VLAN, if the VLAN has been created on the device. Otherwise Authentication is rejected.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id <vlan-id (1 - 4096)>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`vlan-id`	Keyword for the VLAN ID	-
-	VLAN ID	1 - 4096

Result

The guest VLAN ID is assigned to the port.

Further notes

You reset the guest VLAN ID to the default value with the `no dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id`command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.3.4 no dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id

Description

With this command, the guest VLAN ID is reset to the default value 1.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id
```

Result

The ID of the guest VLAN has the value 1.

Further notes

You configure the guest VLAN ID with the `dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.3.5 dot1x guest-vlan reset

Description

This command removes MAC addresses from the guest VLAN. If you specify a MAC address, only this MAC address is removed from the guest VLAN. If you use this command without parameters, all MAC addresses are removed from the guest VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dot1x guest-vlan reset [mac <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mac`	Keyword for the MAC address	-
	MAC address to be removed from the guest VLAN.	`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`

Result

The specified MAC address or all MAC addresses are no longer assigned to the guest VLAN.

12.5.3.6 set dot1x guest-vlan mac-addr count

Description

With this command, you specify how many MAC addresses can be authenticated on the port at the same time.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
set dot1x guest-vlan mac-addr count <num-of-addresses (1-100)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
num-of-addresses	Maximum number of MAC addresses	1 ... 100

Result

The maximum number of MAC addresses for the port has been specified.

Further notes

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.3.7 dot1x mac-auth

Description

With this command, you enable MAC authentication for a port.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dot1x mac-auth [timeout]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`timeout`	Keyword for the 802.1X timeout with which the conditions for the MAC authentication are defined. When you specify this keyword, MAC authentication is only possible after a 802.1X timeout, but not after a failed 802.1X authentication. If you call the command without parameters, MAC authentication is possible both after a 802.1X timeout and after a failed 802.1X authentication.	-

Result

MAC authentication is enabled for a port.

Further notes

You also still need to enable MAC authentication for the device. You do this with the `dot1x mac-auth` command in the Global configuration mode.

You disable the function with the `no dot1x mac-auth` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.3.8 no dot1x mac-auth

Description

With this command, you disable MAC authentication for a port. You can also define the conditions for a MAC authentication with a parameter.

Requirement

You are in interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no dot1x mac-auth [timeout]
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`timeout`	Keyword for the 802.1X timeout with which the conditions for the MAC authentication are defined. When you specify this keyword, MAC authentication is also possible after a failed 802.1X authentication. If you call the command without the `timeout` parameters, you disable the MAC authentication for a port.	-

Result

MAC authentication is disabled for a port or the conditions for MAC authentication are defined.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `dot1x mac-auth` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.3.9 dot1x mac-auth port reset

Description

With this command, you reset MAC authentication for a port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dot1x mac-auth port [mac <aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa>] reset
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mac`	Keyword for a MAC address	-
`aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa`	MAC address of the interface	aa:aa:aa:aa:aa:aa

Result

MAC authentication is reset for the port.

12.5.3.10 dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign

Description

With this command you enable the assignment of the VLAN ID for a MAC address by the RADIUS server.

The port can only be assigned to the VLAN, if the VLAN has been created on the device. Otherwise Authentication is rejected.

If during authentication a port is assigned to a VLAN dynamically using this function, assignment using the VLAN ID or the VLAN name is possible. Configure the following values on the RADIUS server:

- Tunnel-Type = VLAN
- Tunnel-Medium-Type = IEEE-802
- Tunnel-Private-Group-Id = VLAN ID or VLAN name

The IE switch distinguishes as follows:

- VLAN ID: The RADIUS server transfers a numeric string for the parameter "Tunnel-Private-Group-Id".
- VLAN name: The RADIUS server transfers an alphanumeric string for the parameter "Tunnel-Private-Group-Id".

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign
```

Result

The VLAN ID for a MAC address is assigned by the RADIUS server.

Additional notes

You disable the assignment of the VLAN ID for a MAC address by the RADIUS server with the `no dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.3.11 no dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign

Description

With this command you disable the assignment of the VLAN ID for a MAC address by the RADIUS server.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign
```

Result

The VLAN ID for a MAC address is no longer assigned by the RADIUS server.

Further notes

You enable the assignment of the VLAN ID for a MAC address by the RADIUS server with the `dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign` command.

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.3.12 set dot1x mac-auth mac-addr count

Description

With this command, you specify how many MAC addresses can be authenticated on the port at the same time.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
set dot1x mac-auth mac-addr count <num-of-addresses (1-100)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
num-of-addresses	Maximum number of devices	1 ... 100

Result

The maximum number of devices for the port has been specified.

Further notes

You display this setting and other information with the `show dot1x` command.

12.5.3.13 dot1x port-control

Description

With this command, you configure port control parameter of the authenticator.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
dot1x port-control {auto|force-authorized|force-unauthorized}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`auto`	Authentication according to IEEE 802.1x is enabled for the interface. The data traffic via the interface is permitted or blocked depending on the authentication result.	-
`force-authorized`	data traffic via the interface is permitted without restrictions	Default: `force-authorized` enabled
`force-unauthorized`	data traffic via the interface is blocked	-

Result

The port control parameter is configured.

Further notes

You can reset the port control parameter to the default with the `no dot1x port-control` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show dot1x`command.

12.5.3.14 no dot1x port-control

Description

With this command, you reset the port control parameter of the authenticator to the default value.

The default value is `force-authorized`.

With this, data traffic is permitted without restrictions.

Requirement

You are in the Interface Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x port-control
```

Result

The port control parameter of the authenticator is reset to the default value.

Further notes

You configure the port control parameter with the `dot1x port-control` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show dot1x`command.

12.5.3.15 dot1x reauthentication

Description

With this command, you enable the 802.1X Re-Authentication function for the selected interface. When the function is enabled, the authenticator repeats authentication of the client periodically,

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
dot1x reauthentication
```

Result

Periodic authentication is enabled for the selected interface.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no dot1x reauthentication` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show dot1x`command.

12.5.3.16 no dot1x reauthentication

Description

With this command, you disable the function that repeats the authentication of the client by the authenticator periodically.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no dot1x reauthentication
```

Result

Periodic authentication is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `dot1x reauthentication` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show dot1x`command.

Diagnostics

13

The monitoring of the system and error diagnostics are handled in different ways:

- Events and faults handling:
  Predefined events generate a message. These messages can be distributed in different ways:
  - Entry in the local log
  - Transfer to the Syslog server
  - Sending as e-mail
  - Sending as SNMP trap
- Syslog:
  Configures the transfer to the Syslog server
- Remote Monitoring (RMON):
  Variables of the Management Information Base are monitored for the violation of limit values and messages are generated if they do. These messages are collected and can be distributed in the following ways:
  - Entry in the local log
  - Sending as SNMP trap
  - Transfer to the Syslog server
  - Transfer to a network management station using SNMP
- Port mirroring:
  Mirroring of ports to analyze the data stream without disturbing operation
- Loop Detection:
  Detection and monitoring of parallel connections or loops in an Ethernet network. Loops in the network can cause total failure of the transfer and must be detected and eliminated.

13.1 Event and fault handling

In events and faults handling, you set the events whose messages will be distributed in one of the available ways.

You configure the monitoring of certain system events and power supply and physical interfaces in the Events configuration mode.

13.1.1 logging console

Description

With this command, you display the log messages in the console. The function can only be active on one connection at a time.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
logging console
```

Result

The output of the log messages in the console is activated.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no logging console` command.

As default the function is "disabled".

13.1.2 no logging console

Description

With this command, you disable the output of log messages in the console.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no logging console
```

Result

The function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `logging console` command.

As default the function is "disabled".

13.1.3 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.1.3.1 show events config

Description

This command shows the current configuration for forwarding the messages of the various event types.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show events config
```

Result

The current configuration of the events display is displayed.

13.1.3.2 show events severity

Description

This command shows the degree of severity of an event ("Info", "Warning" or "Critical") starting at which a notification (sending of an e-mail, entry in the Syslog table, entry in the Syslog file) is generated.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show events severity
```

Result

The corresponding degree of severity is shown for each type of notification.

Further notes

You configure the assignment of the degree of severity of an event and the type of notification with the `severity` command.

13.1.3.3 show events faults config

Description

This command shows the current configuration of the following error monitoring functions:

- Monitoring of the power supply for power outage
- Monitoring of the network connections for a change in the connection status

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show events faults config [{power|link}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`power`	Monitoring of the power supply for power outage
`link`	Monitoring of the network connections for a change in the connection status

If no parameters are specified, the settings for both error monitoring functions are displayed.

Result

The current configuration of the selected error monitoring function is displayed.

13.1.3.4 show events faults status

Description

This command shows the status messages of fault monitoring of the power supply and network connections.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show events faults status
```

Result

A table with the status messages of the error monitoring functions is displayed.

13.1.3.5 show startup-information

Description

This command shows the startup information.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>`or`cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show startup-information
```

Result

Startup information is shown.

13.1.3.6 show logbook

Description

With this command, you display the content of the logbook. The log entries are categorized differently.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show logbook
```

or

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show logbook [{ info | warning | critical }]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`info`	All log entries of the categories "Information", "Warning" and "Critical" are displayed.
`warning`	All log entries of the categories "Warning" and "Critical" are displayed.
`critical`	All log entries of the category "Critical" are displayed.

Result

The content of the logbook is displayed.

13.1.3.7 show fault counter

Description

This command shows the number of errors since the last startup.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show fault counter
```

Result

The number of faults is displayed.

Further notes

You reset the counter for the errors with the `clear fault counter` command.

13.1.3.8 show cabletest interface

Description

This command shows the result of the cable test of the interface.

Requirement

- The interface has no active data traffic.
- The `cabletest interface` function was used on the specified interface in the Global configuration mode.
- You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show cabletest interface <interface-type> <interface-id>
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Interface identifier	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The result is displayed.

Further notes

You enable the cable test function with the `cabletest interface` command in the Global configuration mode.

13.1.3.9 show interface transceiver details

Description

This command runs error diagnostics for an SFP port.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
show interface transceiver details
```

Result

Hardware information (model, serial number) and operating parameters (data transmission rate, voltage and current consumption as well as the transmit and receive power) for SFP port are displayed.

13.1.3.10 show power-line-state

Description

This command shows the status of the power supply.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show power-line-state
```

Result

The status of the power supply is displayed.

13.1.4 clear logbook

Description

With this command, you delete the content of the logbook.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear logbook
```

Result

The content of the logbook is deleted.

13.1.5 clear fault counter

Description

With this command you reset the counter that shows the number of faults since the last startup.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
clear fault counter
```

Result

The counter is set to "0".

Further notes

You shows the number of faults since the last startup with the `show fault counter` command.

13.1.6 fault report ack

Description

Some errors can be acknowledged and thus removed from the error list, e.g. an error of the event "Cold/warm restart".

With this command, you can acknowledge these errors or remove them from the error list.

Requirement

You are in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameter:

```
fault report ack <fault-state-id>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameters	Description	Range of values/note
`fault-state-id`	Error ID	Enter the ID of the error. You determine the ID with the "`show events faults status`" command.

Result

The error is acknowledged and removed from the error list.

13.1.7 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.1.7.1 events

Description

With this command, you change to the EVENTS configuration mode.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
events
```

Result

You are now in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Further notes

You exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the command `end` or `exit`.

13.1.7.2 cabletest interface

Description

With this command, you enable the cable test for the specified interface.

Note
Wire pairs

Wire pairs 4-5 and 7-8 of 10/100 Mbps network cables are not used.

The wire pair assignment - pin assignment is as follows (DIN 50173):

Pair 1 = pin 1-2

Pair 2 = pin 3-6

Pair 3 = pin 4-5

Pair 4 = pin 7-8

Requirement

- The interface has no active data traffic.
- You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command without parameters or with the following parameter assignment:

```
cabletest interface <interface-type> <interface-id> [force]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface-type`	Type of interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Interface identifier	
`force`	Forces a `link down` during the test	Necessary parameter if there is a `link up` on the interface.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

Following the test phase, the result is displayed.

The value for the distance has a tolerance of +/- 1 m.

13.1.8 Commands in the Events configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the EVENTS configuration mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `events` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in EVENTS configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.1.8.1 add log

Description

With this command, you create an entry in the log.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
add log <log-entry>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`log-entry`	Entry in the logbook	max. 150 characters

Result

The entry has been made in the logbook.

13.1.8.2 client config

Description

With this command, you enable one of the clients that processes or forwards the messages of the device.

The following clients are available:

- `syslog`: sends the messages to the Syslog server
- `trap`: sends the messages as SNMP trap to a configured recipient
- `email`: sends the messages as e-mails

Requirement

You are in EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
client config {syslog | trap | email | all}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`syslog`	Enables the client that sends the messages to the Syslog server
`trap`	Enables the client that sends the SNMP traps
`email`	Enables the client that sends the e-mails
`all`	Enables all clients at once

Result

The client selected for the transmission is enabled.

Additional notes

You display the status of the events and the clients with the `show events config` command.

You disable a client with the `no client config` command.

13.1.8.3 no client config

Description

With this command, you disable one of the clients that processes or forwards the messages of the device.

Requirement

You are in EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no client config {syslog | trap | email | all}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`syslog`	Disables the client that sends the messages to the Syslog server
`trap`	Disables the client that sends the SNMP traps
`email`	Disables the client that sends the e-mails
`all`	Disables all clients at once

Result

The client selected for the transmission is disabled.

Additional notes

You display the status of the events and the clients with the `show events config` command.

You enable the function with the `client config` command.

13.1.8.4 event config

Note

Depending on the device type, the IE switch does not support all described parameters; see section "Features not supported (Page 35)".

Description

With this command, you configure which of the various message types of the device will be stored or forwarded.

The following events or message types are available:

- Message if there is cold or warm restart
- Message when there is a status change on a physical interface
- Message if there is an incorrect login
- Message when there is a Remote Monitoring alarm (RMON alarm)
- Message when there is a status change in the power supply
- Message when there is a status change in the redundancy manager (RM)
- Message when there is a status change on a standby connection
- Message when there is a status change in the error monitoring
- Message when there is a change in the spanning tree
- Message when there is a status change of the VRRP routers
- Message if there is a status change in the detection of network loops
- Message on status change of OSPF
- Message when there is a status change in the 802.1X authentication
- Message on status change of PoE
- Message on status change of FMP
- Message when there is a status change in the diagnostics data
- Message on status change of Link Check
- Message when an error was detected in the CLI script file

- Message on error in connection with secure NTP
- Message on persistent saving of configuration
- Message on non-configurable entry in the log table

These messages can be processed by the clients in different ways:

- Entry in the logbook of the device
- Sending the message to the Syslog server
- Sending an e-mail
- Sending an SNMP trap

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
event config
   {cold-warmstart | linkchange | authentication-failure | rmon-alarm
| power-change | rm-state-change | standby-state-change | faultstate-
change | stp-change | vrrp-state-change | loopd-state-change | ospf-
state-change | dot1x-port-auth-state-change | poe-state-change | fmp-
state-change | env-data-change | linkcheck-change | cli-script-file-
status | secure-ntp | config-change | service-information | all}
{logtable | syslog | email | trap | faults | all}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`cold-warmstart`	Message if there is cold or warm restart
`linkchange`	Message when there is a status change on a physical interface
`authentication-failure`	Message if there is an incorrect login
`rmon-alarm`	Message when there is a RMON alarm
`power-change`	Message when there is a status change in the power supply
`rm-state-change`	Message when there is a status change in the redundancy manager
`standby-state-change`	Message when there is a status change on a standby connection
`faultstate-change`	Message when there is a status change in the error monitoring
`stp-change`	Message when there is a change in the spanning tree
`vrrp-state-change`	Message on status change of VRRP routers
`loopd-state-change`	Message if there is a status change in the detection of network loops
`ospf-state-change`	Message on status change of OSPF

Parameter	Description
`dot1x-port-auth-state-change`	Message when there is a status change in the 802.1X authentication
`poe-state-change`	Message on status change of PoE
`fmp-state-change`	Message on status change of FMP
`env-data-change`	Message when there is a status change in the diagnostics data
`linkcheck-change`	Message on status change of Link Check
`cli-script-file-status`	Message when an error was detected in the CLI script file
`secure-ntp`	Message on error in connection with secure NTP
`config-change`	Message on persistent saving of configuration
`service-information`	Message on non-configurable entry in the log table
`all`	All messages
`logtable`	Client that processes the logbook entries
`syslog`	Client that sends the messages to the Syslog server
`email`	Client that sends the e-mails
`trap`	Client that sends the SNMP traps
`faults`	Error LED lights up. The setting is possible only for a cold or warm restart.
`all`	All clients at once

Result

The setting deciding which message of the device is stored or forwarded is configured.

Additional notes

You display the status of the events and the clients with the `show events config` command.

You delete the settings with the `no event config` command.

With this command, the clients are not enabled.

To enable the clients, use the `client config` command.

Note

Changing several message types or clients

With each command call, you can only select one message type and one client.

If you want to process several message types or clients, it may be more efficient to first select the `all` option and then disable individual elements.

13.1.8.5 no event config

Note

Depending on the device type, the IE switch does not support all described parameters; see section "Features not supported (Page 35)".

Description

With this command, you configure which of the various message types of the device will no longer be stored or forwarded.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no event config
   {cold-warmstart | linkchange | authentication-failure | rmon-alarm
| power-change | rm-state-change | standby-state-change | faultstate-
change | stp-change | vrrp-state-change | loopd-state-change | ospf-
state-change | dot1x-port-auth-state-change | poe-state-change | fmp-
state-change | env-data-change | linkcheck-change | cli-script-file-
status | secure-ntp | config-change | service-information | all}
{logtable | syslog | email | trap | faults | all}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
`cold-warmstart`	Message if there is cold or warm restart
`linkchange`	Message when there is a status change on a physical interface
`authentication-failure`	Message if there is an incorrect login
`rmon-alarm`	Message when there is a RMON alarm
`power-change`	Message when there is a status change in the power supply
`rm-state-change`	Message when there is a status change in the redundancy manager
`standby-state-change`	Message when there is a status change on a standby connection
`faultstate-change`	Message when there is a status change in the error monitoring
`stp-change`	Message when there is a change in the spanning tree
`vrrp-state-change`	Message on status change of VRRP routers
`loopd-state-change`	Message if there is a status change in the detection of network loops

Parameter	Description
ospf-state-change	Message on status change of OSPF
dot1x-port-auth-state-change	Message when there is a status change in the 802.1X authentication
poe-state-change	Message on status change of PoE
fmp-state-change	Message on status change of FMP
env-data-change	Message when there is a status change in the diagnostics data
linkcheck-change	Message on status change of Link Check
cli-script-file-status	Message when an error was detected in the CLI script file
secure-ntp	Message on error in connection with secure NTP
config-change	Message on persistent saving of configuration
service-information	Message on non-configurable entry in the log table
all	All messages
logtable	Client that processes the logbook entries
syslog	Client that sends the messages to the Syslog server
email	Client that sends the e-mails
trap	Client that sends the SNMP traps
faults	Error LED lights up. The setting is possible only for a cold or warm restart.
all	All clients at once

Result

The setting deciding which messages of the device are not stored or forwarded is configured.

Additional notes

You display the status of the events and the clients with the `show events config` command.

You configure which of the various message types of the device will be stored or forwarded with the `event config` command.

13.1.8.6 severity

Description

With this command, you configure the threshold values for the sending of system event notifications.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli (config-events) #
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
severity { mail | log | syslog } { info | warning | critical }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mail`	Specifies the threshold value for sending system event messages by e-mail.	-
`log`	Specifies the threshold value for entering system event messages in the log table.	-
`syslog`	Specifies the threshold value for entering system event messages in the Syslog file.	-
`info`	System events are processed as of the severity level "`Information`".	-
`warning`	System events are processed as of the severity level "`Warning`".	-
`critical`	System events are processed as of the severity level "`Critical`".	-

Result

The settings for sending system event messages are configured.

The "severity" function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no severity` command.

You display the status of this function and other information `show events severity`

13.1.8.7 no severity

Description

With this command, you disable the setting for the threshold values for the sending of system event notifications.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli (config-events) #
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no severity { mail | log | syslog }
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`mail`	The setting of the threshold value for sending system event messages by e-mail is disabled.	-
`log`	The setting of the threshold value for entering system event messages in the log table disabled.	-
`syslog`	The setting of the threshold value the entering event messages in the Syslog file is disabled.	-

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The settings for sending system event messages are configured.

Further notes

You enable the setting with the `severity` command.

You display the status of this function and other information `show events severity`.

13.1.8.8 power

Description

With this command, you configure and activate the monitoring of the power supplies.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
power [{L1|L2}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
L1	Monitoring of power supply 1
L2	Monitoring of power supply 2

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value "L1 and L2" is used.

Result

The setting for monitoring the power supplies is configured.

Further notes

You can display the current setting with the `show events faults config` command.

You disable the function with the `no power` command.

13.1.8.9 no power

Description

With this command, you disable the monitoring of the power supplies.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no power [{L1|L2}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description
L1	No monitoring of power supply 1
L2	No monitoring of power supply 2

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value "L1 and L2" is used.

Result

The setting for monitoring the power supplies is configured.

Further notes

You can display the current setting with the `show events faults config` command.

You enable the function with the `power` command.

13.1.8.10 link

Description

With this command, you configure and enable the monitoring of the physical network connections for cable breaks or for pulling of the connector.

Requirement

You are in EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
link {up | down}[{<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`up`	Only the establishment of a connection is signaled	-
`down`	Only the termination of a connection is signaled	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select an interface, the function is enabled for all available interfaces.

Result

The settings for monitoring the physical network connections have been configured.

Additional notes

You display the setting with the `show events faults config` command.

You display the current error state with the `show events faults status` command.

You disable the function with the `no link` command.

13.1.8.11 no link

Description

With this command, you disable the monitoring of the physical network connections for cable breaks or for pulling of the connector.

Requirement

You are in EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no link {up | down}[{<interface-type><interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`up`	The message when establishing a connection is disabled	-
`down`	The message when a connection is down is disabled	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Specify a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select an interface, the function is disabled for all available interfaces.

Result

The settings for monitoring the physical network connections have been configured.

Additional notes

You display this setting and other information with the `show events faults config` command.

You display the current error state with the `show events faults status` command.

You enable the function with the `link` command.

13.1.8.12 syslogserver

Description

With this command, you configure the Syslog server address.

Requirement

You are in EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli (config-events) #
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
syslogserver {ipv4 <ucast_addr>} [<port(1-65535)>] [tls]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IP address	-
`ucast_addr`	Syslog server IPv4 address	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
`port`	Serverport	1 .. 65535 Default: 514
`tls`	Communication with the Syslog server is encrypted.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The settings for the Syslog server are configured.

Additional notes

You disable the setting with the `no syslogserver` command.

You display the status of this function and other information with the `show events syslogserver` command.

13.1.8.13 no syslogserver

Description

With this command, you delete a Syslog server.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli (config-events) #
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
syslogserver {ipv4 <ucast_addr>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IP address	-
`ucast_addr`	Syslog server IPv4 Address	Enter a valid IPv4 address.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The Syslog server is deleted.

Further notes

You add a Syslog server `syslogserver`.

13.1.8.14 hrp-redundancy-loss

Description

With this command, you activate the monitoring of HRP and MRP redundancy.

Requirement

You are in EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
hrp-redundancy-loss
```

Result

Redundancy monitoring is enabled.

Additional notes

You can display the current setting with the `show events faults config` command.

You disable the function with the `no hrp-redundancy-loss` command.

13.1.8.15 no hrp-redundancy-loss

Description

With this command, you disable the monitoring of HRP and MRP redundancy.

Requirement

You are in EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-events)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no hrp-redundancy-loss
```

Result

Redundancy monitoring is disabled.

Additional notes

You can display the current setting with the `show events faults config` command.

You enable the function with the `hrp-redundancy-loss` command.

13.2 FMP

With Fiber Monitoring, you can monitor the received power and the loss of power on optical links between two switches.

If you enable fiber monitoring on an optical port, the device sends the current transmit power of the port to its connection partner using LLDP packets. In addition to sending, the device also checks whether corresponding information is received from the connection partner.

Regardless of whether the IE switch receives diagnostics information from its connection partner, it monitors the received power measured at the optical port for the set limit values.

If fiber monitoring is enabled on the connection partner, the connection partner transfers the current value for the transmit power of the port to the device. The device compares the value it has received for the transmit power with the actually received power. The difference between the received power and the transmit power represents the power loss on the link. The calculated power loss is also monitored for the set limit values.

If the value of the received power or the power loss falls below or exceeds the set limit values, an event is triggered. You can set limit values in two stages for messages with the severity levels "Warning" and "Critical".

13.2.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.2.1.1 show fmp limit

Description

This command shows the limit values for the received power and the power loss that you set for monitoring optical ports or connections with fiber monitoring.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show fmp limit [{port <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If no parameters are specified, the settings for all interfaces are displayed.

Result

The limits set for the received power and the power loss are displayed.

13.2.1.2 show fmp status

Description

This command shows the current status and the current values of the optical ports or connections that you monitor with fiber monitoring.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show fmp status [{port <interface-type> <interface-id>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`port`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on identifiers of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If no parameters are specified, the settings for all interfaces are displayed.

Result

The status of the optical ports is displayed.

13.2.2 Commands in the Interface Configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.2.2.1 fmp

Description

With this command, you enable fiber monitoring.

Requirement

- To be able to use the fiber monitoring function, enable LLDP. The fiber monitoring information is appended to the LLDP packets.
- You can only use fiber monitoring with transceivers capable of diagnostics. Note the documentation of the devices.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

`fmp`

Default: Disabled

Result

Fiber monitoring is enabled.

Additional notes

You disable this function with the `no fmp` command.

You display the status of this function and other information with the `show fmp status` and `show fmp limit` commands.

You define the limit values with the `fmp power-loss` and `fmp rx-power` commands.

13.2.2.2 no fmp

Description

With this command, you disable fiber monitoring.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.
The command prompt is:
`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no fmp
```

Default: enabled

Result

Fiber monitoring is disabled.

Further notes

You enable this function with the `fmp` command.

You display the status of this function and other information with the and `show fmp limit` commands.

You define the limit values with the `fmp power-loss` and `fmp rx-power` commands.

13.2.2.3 fmp power-loss

Description

With this command, you specify the limit values for monitoring the power loss per port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.
The command prompt is:
`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
fmp power-loss [req { <integer(0-0)> | - <integer(1-55)>}] [dem
{ <integer(0-0)> | - <integer(1-55)>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`req`	Specify the value at which you are informed of the power loss of the connection by a message of the severity level "Warning"	0 ... -55 dB Default: -50 dB If you enter the value "0", the power loss is not monitored.
`dem`	Specify the value at which you are informed of the power loss of the connection by a message of the severity level "Critical"	0 ... -55 dB Default: -55 dB If you enter the value "0", the power loss is not monitored.

Result

The limits for monitoring the power loss are defined.

Further notes

You enable this function with the `fmp` command.

You disable this function with the `no fmp` command.

You display the status of this function and other information with the and `show fmp limit` commands.

You define the limit values for the received power with the command `fmp rx-power`.

13.2.2.4 fmp rx-power

Description

With this command, you specify the limit values for monitoring the received power per port.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.
The command prompt is:
`cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
fmp rx-power [req { <integer(0-0)> | - <integer(1-40)>}] [dem
{ <integer(0-0)> | - <integer(1-40)>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`req`	Specify the value at which you are informed of the deterioration of the received power by a message of the severity level "Warning"	0 ... -40 dBm The default value depends on the relevant pluggable transceiver. If you enter the value "0", the received power is not monitored.
`dem`	Specify the value at which you are informed of the deterioration of the received power by a message of the severity level "Critical"	0 ... -40 dBm The default value depends on the relevant pluggable transceiver. If you enter the value "0", the received power is not monitored.

Result

The limits for monitoring the received power are defined.

Additional notes

You enable this function with the `fmp` command.

You disable this function with the `no fmp` command.

You display the status of this function and other information with the and `show fmp limit` commands.

You define the limit values for the power loss with the command `fmp power-loss`.

13.3 Syslog client

With the commands in this section, the following settings are configured:

- Transfer of the messages to the Syslog server
- Local buffering and storage of messages
- Receipt and forwarding of messages from other devices (relay mode)

13.3.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.3.1.1 show events syslogserver

Description

This command shows the entries of the configured Syslog server.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show events syslogserver
```

Result

The entries of the configured Syslog server are displayed.

13.3.2 Commands in the Events configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the EVENTS configuration mode.

In global configuration mode, enter the `events` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the EVENTS configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in EVENTS configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.3.2.1 syslogserver

Description

With this command, you configure the Syslog server address.

Requirement

You are in EVENTS configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli (config-events) #
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
syslogserver {ipv4 <ucast_addr>} [<port(1-65535)>] [tls]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IP address	-
`ucast_addr`	Syslog server IPv4 address	Enter a valid IPv4 address.
`port`	Serverport	1 .. 65535 Default: 514
`tls`	Communication with the Syslog server is encrypted.	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The settings for the Syslog server are configured.

Additional notes

You disable the setting with the `no syslogserver` command.

You display the status of this function and other information with the `show events syslogserver` command.

13.3.2.2 no syslogserver

Description

With this command, you delete a Syslog server.

Requirement

You are in the EVENTS Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli (config-events) #
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
syslogserver {ipv4 <ucast_addr>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`ipv4`	Keyword for an IP address	-
`ucast_addr`	Syslog server IPv4 Address	Enter a valid IPv4 address.

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The Syslog server is deleted.

Further notes

You add a Syslog server `syslogserver`.

13.4 RMON

The RMON function provides commands with which variables of the Management Information Base (MIB) can be monitored for violation of limit values and to store or forward these events in the following ways:

- Entry in the local log
- Sending as SNMP trap
- Transfer to the Syslog server
- Transfer to a network management station using SNMP

Example of a configuration

Calls the SNMP notification configured in the section "SNMP (Page 373)" ("`testnotify`") for sending SNMP traps.

As soon as the threshold of 10 entries is exceeded in the log table, event 1 is triggered.

As soon as the threshold of 9 entries is exceeded in the log table, event 2 is triggered.

Execute the following commands:

```
configure terminal
rmon event 1 description "More than 10 log entries" trap testnotify
rmon event 2 description "Less than 9 log entries" trap testnotify
rmon alarm 1 1.3.6.1.4.1.4329.20.1.1.1.1.31.2.0 1 absolute rising-
threshold 10 1 falling-threshold 9 2
end
```

13.4.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.4.1.1 show rmon

Description

This command shows the settings of the remote monitoring function.

Requirement

You are in User EXEC mode or in Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show rmon [statistics [<stats-index (1-65535)>]] [alarms] [events]
[history [history-index (1-65535)] [overview]]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values/note
`statistics`	Shows counts for various packet characteristics and sizes.	-
`stats-index`	Index number of the port for which statistical information is displayed.	1 ... maximum number of ports of the device
`alarms`	Shows the threshold values and event assignments for alarms.	-
`events`	Shows the status and the actions that are triggered.	-
`history`	Shows the stored statistical values for earlier transmission periods.	-
`history-index`	Index number of the port for which earlier statistical information is displayed.	1 ... maximum number of ports of the device
`overview`	Displays an overview.	-

With this command, you can display several parameters with one call.

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, only the `enabled` or `disabled` status is shown.

Result

The settings of the remote monitoring function are displayed.

13.4.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.4.2.1 rmon

Description

With this command, you enable the Remote Monitoring function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
rmon
```

Default: disabled

Result

The Remote Monitoring function is enabled.

Further notes

You disable this function with the `no rmon` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show rmon` command.

13.4.2.2 no rmon

Description

With this command, you disable the Remote Monitoring function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
no rmon
```

Default: disabled

Result

The Remote Monitoring function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable this function with the `rmon` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show rmon` command.

13.4.2.3 rmon alarm

Description

With this command, you configure an alarm for monitoring a MIB variable. The variable is checked at specific intervals to determine whether or not it has exceeded or fallen below threshold values. Events are assigned to these occurrences.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
rmon alarm <alarm-number><mib-object-id(255)>
   <sample-interval-time(1-65535)>
   {absolute|delta}
   rising-threshold<value(0-2147483647)>[risingevent-
number(1-65535)]
   falling-threshold<value(0-2147483647)>[fallingevent-
number(1-65535)]
   [owner<ownername(127)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`alarm-number`	Number of the alarm	1 ... 250
`mib-object-id`	OID of the MIB tag to be monitored	max. 255 characters
`sample-interval-time`	Interval for the check [s]	1 ... 65535
`absolute`	The current absolute value of the monitored MIB is evaluated	-

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`delta`	The difference between the current and the previous value of the monitored MIB is evaluated	-
`rising-threshold`	Keyword for threshold value for rising or high variable values	-
`value`	Relevant threshold value	0 ... 2147483647
`risingevent-number`	Event number for this	1 ... 65535
`falling-threshold`	Keyword for threshold value for falling or low variable values	-
`value`	Relevant threshold value	0 ... 2147483647
`fallingevent-number`	Event number for this	1 ... 65535
`owner`	User to which the alarm is assigned	-
`ownername`	User name of the user	max. 127 characters

If you do not select a parameter from the parameter list, the events for high and low threshold values are assigned the lowest event number available in the event table.

Note

MIB variables that can be monitored

With the RMON function, only MIB variables of the Ethernet interfaces can be monitored.

Note

Magnitude of the threshold values

The threshold value for falling or low variable values should be less than the threshold value for rising or high variable values.

Note

Conditions for working with alarms

The events assigned to the alarms are configured.

The Remote monitoring function is started with the `rmon` command.

Result

The alarm for monitoring a MIB variable is configured.

Further notes

You delete an alarm with the `no rmon alarm` command.

You display the list of configured RMON alarms with the `show rmon alarms` command.

13.4.2.4 no rmon alarm

Description

With this command, you delete an alarm for monitoring a MIB variable.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no rmon alarm <number (1-250)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`number`	Number of the alarm to be deleted	1 ... 250

Result

The entry for monitoring a MIB variable is deleted.

13.4.2.5 rmon event

Description

With this command, you configure an event in the RMON Event Table.

You specify a description and the person responsible and specify which SNMP notification is generated. You can configure the sending of traps globally with the command `snmp notify`.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
rmon event <number(1-500)>[description<event-description(127)>]
   [owner<ownername(127)>][trap<notify(127)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`number`	Number of the event	1 ... 500
`description`	Keyword for a description	-
`event-description`	Description of the event that is output in the message.	max. 127 characters
`owner`	Keyword for the person responsible	-
`ownername`	Name of the person responsible	max. 127 characters
`trap`	Keyword for selecting an SNMP notification	-
`notify`	Name of the SNMP notification to be triggered.	The only valid entry allowed is "SNMPv1Traps". You can configure the sending of traps globally with the command `snmp notify`.

Result

The event is configured.

Further notes

You delete an entry with the `no rmon event` command.

You display the RMON Event Table with the `show rmon events` command.

You show the details of the SNMP community with the `show snmp community` command.

13.4.2.6 no rmon event

Description

With this command, you delete an entry from the RMON event table.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no rmon event <number (1-500)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`number`	Number of the event entry to be deleted	1 ... 500

Result

The entry is deleted from the RMON event table.

13.4.3 Commands in the interface configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.4.3.1 rmon collection stats

Description

With this command, you start the recording of statistical data of an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
rmon collection stats <index (1-52)>[owner<ownername(127)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
index	Number of the recording	1 ... 52
owner	User to which the event is assigned	-
ownername	User name of the user	max. 127 characters

Result

The recording of statistical data is started.

Further notes

You can display the content of a recording with the `show rmon statistics` command.

13.4.3.2 no rmon collection stats

Description

With this command, you end the recording of statistical data of an interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no rmon collection stats <index (1-52)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
index	Number of the recording	1 ... 52

Result

The recording of statistical data is ended.

13.4.3.3 rmon collection history

Description

With this command you configure whether or not samples of the statistics are saved for a port. You can specify how many entries ("Buckets") should be saved and at which intervals samples should be taken.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
rmon collection history<index(1-52)>
   [buckets<bucket-number(1-65535)>]
   [interval<seconds(1-3600)>]
   [owner<ownername(127)>]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`index`	Number of the recording	1 ... 65535
`buckets`	Keyword for entries	-
`bucket-number`	Maximum number of entries (recordings)	1 ... 65535 The maximum number of entries can be restricted by the capacity of the device. Default: 50
`interval`	Keyword for recording intervals	-
`seconds`	Duration of the recording intervals in seconds	1 ... 3600 Default: 1800
`owner`	User to which the event is assigned	-
`ownername`	User name of the user	max. 127 characters Default: monitor

If you do not select any parameter from the parameter list, the default values are used.

Result

The data is recorded.

Further notes

You can display the content of a recording with the `show rmon history` command.

13.4.3.4 no rmon collection history

Description

With this command, you end the recording of statistical data of the interface.

Requirement

You are in the Interface configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config-if-$$$)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no rmon collection history <index(1-52)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`index`	Number of the recording	1 ... 52

Result

The data recording is ended.

13.5 Port Mirroring

Note

It cannot be guaranteed when mirroring the data traffic that all packets are mirrored.

With the port mirroring function, you copy the data stream of one or more ports to another interface to be able to analyze this data stream without disturbing operation.

Note

You need to disable port mirroring if you want to connect a normal end device to the monitor port.

Note the data rate

If the maximum data rate of the mirrored port is higher than that of the monitor port, data may be lost and the monitor port no longer reflects the data traffic at the mirrored port. Several ports can be mirrored to one monitor port at the same time.

Several source ports from the same VLAN

If in a VLAN you select more than one source port for the port-based egress mirroring, unknown unicast and multicast frames as well as broadcast frames are forwarded only once to the destination port.

13.5.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.5.1.1 show monitor

Description

This command shows the status of the port mirroring function.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show monitor
```

Result

The status of the port mirroring function is displayed.

13.5.1.2 show monitor barrier

Description

This command shows the status of the communication via the monitor port. If you enable this option, management of the switch via the monitor port is no longer reachable.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameter assignment:

```
show monitor barrier
```

Result

The settings are displayed.

13.5.1.3 show monitor session

Description

This command shows the settings used for mirroring ports.

You obtain information about the ports from which incoming and/or outgoing data traffic is mirrored and the port at which the mirrored data is output.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
show monitor {session <session-id(1-1)>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`session`	Keyword for a session whose settings are displayed	-
`session-id`	Number of the session	1

Result

The settings for mirroring ports are displayed.

13.5.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.5.2.1 monitor

Description

With this command, you enable the port mirroring function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
monitor
```

As default the function is "disabled".

Result

The port mirroring function is enabled.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function with the `show monitor`command.

You disable the function with the `no monitor` command.

13.5.2.2 no monitor

Description

With this command, you disable the port mirroring function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no monitor
```

Result

The port mirroring function is disabled.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function with the `show monitor`command.

You enable the function with the `monitor` command.

13.5.2.3 monitor barrier enabled

Description

With this command, you disable the communication via the monitor port.

Note

Effects of monitor barrier enabled

If you enable this option, management of the switch via the monitor port is no longer reachable. The following port-specific functions are changed:

- DCP forwarding is turned off
- LLDP is turned off
- Unicast, multicast and broadcast blocking is turned on

The previous statuses of these functions are no longer restored after disabling monitor barrier again. They are reset to the default values and may need to be reconfigured.

You can reconfigure these functions manually even if monitor barrier is turned on. The data traffic on the monitor port is, however, also allowed again. If you do not require this, make sure that only the data traffic you want to monitor is forwarded to the interface.

If mirroring is disabled, the listed port-specific functions are reset to the default values. This reset takes place regardless of whether the functions were configured manually or automatically by enabling "Monitor Barrier".

Requirement

You are in global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
monitor barrier enabled
```

Result

Communication via the monitor port is disabled.

Additional notes

You enable the communication with the `no monitor barrier enabled` command.

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor barrier` command.

13.5.2.4 no monitor barrier enabled

Description

With this command, you enable the communication via the monitor port.

Requirement

You are in the Global Configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no monitor barrier enabled
```

Result

Communication via the monitor port is enabled.

Further notes

You disable the communication with the `monitor barrier enabled` command.

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor barrier` command.

13.5.2.5 monitor session destination

Description

With this command, you configure the destination for mirroring a port.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
monitor session <session-id(1-1)> destination
  {interface <interface-type><interface-id>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Values
`session-id`	Number of the session	1
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Note

Selecting the destination port

A port that is part of a port channel cannot be configured as the destination port for a monitor session.

Result

As soon as you have configured the settings for the port to be monitored and the destination port, the session is complete and active.

Note

If you change the settings for an existing session, all previous configurations of this session are lost.

Further notes

You delete the destination for mirroring a port with the `no monitor session ... destination` command.

You end and delete a session with the `no monitor session` command.

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor session` command.

13.5.2.6 no monitor session destination

Description

With this command, you delete the destination for mirroring a port.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no monitor session <session-id(1-1)> destination
  {interface <interface-type><interface-id>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`session-id`	Number of the session	1
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

The destination for the mirroring of a port is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the destination for mirroring a port with the `monitor session ... destination` command.

You end and delete a session with the `no monitor session` command.

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor session` command.

13.5.2.7 monitor session source

Description

With this command, you configure the source for mirroring a port.

Requirement

- Monitoring is enabled.
- You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call up the command for the port to be monitored with the following parameter assignment:

```
monitor session <session-id(1-1)> source
  {interface {<interface-type> <interface-id> | port-channel <port-
channel-id (1-8)>} [{rx|tx|both}]}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
session-id	Number of the session	1
interface	Keyword for a an interface description	-
interface-type	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
interface-id	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
port-channel	Keyword for a port channel connection	-
port-channel-id	Number of the addressed port channel	1 ... 8
rx	Received data traffic will be mirrored (received)	If you enable the mirroring function for a ring port, the ring port sends test frames even in the "link down" status.
tx	Transmitted data traffic will be mirrored (transmitted)	
both	Received and transmitted data traffic will be mirrored	

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value (both) is used.

Result

As soon as you have configured the settings for the port to be monitored and the destination port, the session is complete and active.

Further notes

You delete the source for mirroring a port with the `no monitor session ... source` command.

You end and delete a session with the `no monitor session` command.

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor session` command.

See also

Features not supported (Page 35)

13.5.2.8 no monitor session source

Description

With this command, you delete the source for mirroring a port or a VLAN.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command for the port to be monitored with the following parameter assignment:

```
no monitor session <session-id(1-1)> source
  {interface <interface-type><interface-id>} [{rx|tx|both}]}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`session-id`	Number of the session	1
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`rx`	Received data traffic will be mirrored (received)	-
`tx`	Transmitted data traffic will be mirrored (transmitted)	-
`both`	Received and transmitted data traffic will be mirrored	-

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value (both) is used.

Result

The source for the mirroring of a port is deleted.

Further notes

You configure the source for mirroring a port with the `monitor session ... source` command.

You end and delete a session with the `no monitor session` command.

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor session` command.

13.5.2.9 no monitor session

Description

With this command, you delete the monitor session.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
no monitor session<session-id(1-1)>
```

The parameter has the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`session-id`	Number of the session	1

Result

The monitor session is deleted.

Further notes

You display the configuration settings with the `show monitor session` command.

You configure and start mirroring of a port with the `monitor session` command.

13.6 Loop detection

With the "Loop detection" function, you specify the ports for which loop detection will be activated. The ports involved send special test frames - the loop detection frames. If these frames are sent back to the device, there is a loop.

A "Local loop" involving this device means that the frames are received again at a different port of the same device. If the sent frames are received again at the same port, there is a "remote loop" involving other network components.

With the commands in this section, you start loop detection and decide which actions will be used on the ports affected if loops are detected.

Note

A loop is an error in the network structure that needs to be eliminated. The loop detection can help to find the errors more quickly but does not eliminate them.

Note

Note that loop detection is only possible at ports that were not configured as ring ports or standby ports.

Note

Changing the configured port status with loop detection

The configuration of the port status can be changed with the "Loop Detection" function. If, for example, the administrator has disabled a port, the port can be enabled again after a device restart by "Loop Detection". The port status "link down" is not changed by "Loop Detection".

13.6.1 The "show" commands

This section describes commands with which you display various settings.

With the `do [command]`, you can execute the commands from the Privileged EXEC mode in any configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.6.1.1 show loopd

Description

With this command, you display the information on loop detection.

Detected loops are shown.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
show loopd
```

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

Result

Information on loop detection is displayed.

13.6.1.2 show loopd interface

Description

Displays information on the loop interface.

Requirement

You are in the User EXEC mode or in the Privileged EXEC mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

`cli>` or `cli#`

Syntax

Call up the command without parameters or with the following parameter assignment:

```
show loopd interface [{<interface-type> <interface-id> | port-
channel <port-channel-id (1-8)>}]
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`interface`	Keyword for a an interface description	-
`interface-type`	Type or speed of the interface	Enter a valid interface.
`interface-id`	Module no. and port no. of the interface	
`port-channel`	Keyword for a port channel connection	-
`port-channel-id`	Number of the addressed port channel	1 ... 8

For information on names of addresses and interfaces, refer to the section "Addresses and interface names (Page 46)".

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

The loop interface is displayed.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

13.6.2 Commands in the global configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the Global configuration mode.

In Privileged EXEC mode, enter the `configure terminal` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the Global configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

You exit the Global configuration mode with the `end` or `exit` command and are then in the Privileged EXEC mode again.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in global configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.6.2.1 loopd

Description

With this command, you enable the loop detection function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
loopd
```

Result

The loop detection function is enabled

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no loopd` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

13.6.2.2 no loopd

Description

With this command, you disable the loop detection function.

Requirement

You are in the Global configuration mode.

The command prompt is as follows:

```
cli(config)#
```

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no loopd
```

Result

The loop detection function is disabled

Further notes

You enable the function with the `loopd` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

13.6.2.3 loopd vlan mode

Description

With this command, you enable the loop detection function for VLAN.

Requirement

- Loopd is activated
- You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
loopd vlan mode
```

Result

The loop detection function is enabled for VLAN.

Further notes

You disable the function with the `no loopd vlan mode` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command

13.6.2.4 no loopd vlan mode

Description

With this command, you disable the loop detection function for VLAN.

Requirement

- Loopd is activated
- You are in the Global configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no loopd vlan mode
```

Result

The loop detection function is disabled for VLAN.

Further notes

You enable the function with the `loopd vlan mode` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command

13.6.3 Commands in the Interface Configuration mode

This section describes commands that you can call up in the interface configuration mode. Depending on the Interface selected, various command sets are available.

In global configuration mode, enter the `interface` command to change to this mode.

Commands relating to other topics that can be called in the interface configuration mode can be found in the relevant sections.

- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `exit` command, you return to the Global configuration mode.
- If you exit the Interface configuration mode with the `end` command, you return to the Privileged EXEC mode.

You can run commands from Privileged EXEC Modus with the `do [command]` in interface configuration mode.

To do this, you replace `[command]` with the command that you want to execute.

13.6.3.1 loopd {blocked | forwarder | sender}

Description

With this command you specify how the port handles loop detection frames.

Requirement

- Loop detection is enabled
- A Spanning Tree port, ring port or standby port cannot be the sender port.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
loopd {blocked | forwarder | sender}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`blocked`	The forwarding of loop detection frames is blocked.	-
`forwarder`	Loop detection frames from other devices are forwarded.	Default after enabling loop detection.
`sender`	Loop detection frames are sent out and forwarded.	-

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used.

Result

It has been configured how the port handles loop detection frames.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

13.6.3.2 loopd {tx-interval | detect-threshold | reaction-timeout}

Description

With this command you configure the send interval, threshold value and reaction time for loop detection.

Requirement

- Loop detection is enabled
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call up the command with the following parameters:

```
loopd {tx-interval <mSec(500-5000)> | detect-threshold
<integer(1-500)> | reaction-timeout <seconds(0-86400)>}
```

The parameters have the following meaning:

Parameter	Description	Range of values / note
`tx-interval`	Keyword for the send interval	-
`mSec`	Specifies the send interval for loop detection frames in milliseconds.	500 ... 5000 Default: 1000
`detect-threshold`	Keyword for the threshold value	-
`integer`	Specifies the threshold value after how many received loop detection frames, a loop is assumed and the device reacts according to the setting.	1 ... 500 Default: 2
`reaction-timeout`	Keyword for the time to the end of the reaction time	-
`seconds`	Specifies the number of seconds after which the device automatically changes to the status in which it was before the loop.	0 ... 86400 Default: 0 If you set the value "0", you need to enable the port manually again following a loop using the command `loopd port reset`.

If you do not select any parameters from the parameter list, the default value is used. The default values apply only to a port enabled earlier with `loopd sender`.

Result

The settings are suitably configured.

Further notes

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

13.6.3.3 loopd port reset

Description

With this command, you enable a port that was blocked by loop detection.

Requirement

- Loop detection is enabled
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
loopd port reset
```

Result

The blocked port is enabled again.

Further notes

You disable the setting with the `no loopd port reset` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

13.6.3.4 no loopd port reset

Description

With this command, you disable the port reset for loop detection.

Requirement

- Loop detection is enabled
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no loopd port reset
```

Result

The port reset function is disabled.

Further notes

You enable the setting with the `loopd port reset` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

13.6.3.5 loopd reaction local

Description

With this command, you activate the "disable" reaction for a local loop. If a local loop is detected, the port is blocked.

Requirement

- Loop detection is enabled.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
loopd reaction local
```

Result

"disable" is activated for the `loopd reaction local` function.

"disable" is the default after enabling loop detection.

Further notes

You enable the "no action" reaction with the `no loopd reaction local` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

13.6.3.6 no loopd reaction local

Description

With this command, you enable the "no action" reaction for a local loop. If a local loop is detected, this has no effect on the port.

Requirement

- Loop detection is enabled.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:

```
no loopd reaction local
```

Result

"no action" is activated for the `loopd reaction local` function.

"disable" is the default after enabling loop detection.

Further notes

You enable the "disable" reaction with the `loopd reaction local` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the show loopd command.

13.6.3.7 loopd reaction remote

Description

With this command, you enable the "disable" reaction for a remote loop. If a remote loop is detected, the port is blocked.

Requirement

- Loop detection is enabled.
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:
`loopd reaction remote`

Result

"disable" is activated for the `loopd reaction remote` function.

"disable" is the default after enabling loop detection.

Further notes

You enable the "no action" reaction with the `no loopd reaction remote` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

13.6.3.8 no loopd reaction remote

Description

With this command, you enable the "no action" reaction for a remote loop. If a remote loop is detected, this has no effect on the port.

Requirement

- loopd is enabled
- You are in the Interface configuration mode.
  The command prompt is:
  `cli(config-if-$$$)#`

Syntax

Call the command without parameters:
`no loopd reaction remote`

Result

"no action" is activated for the `loop reaction remote` function.

"disable" is the default after enabling loop detection.

Further notes

You enable the "disable" setting with the `loopd reaction remote` command.

You can display the status of this function and other information with the `show loopd` command.

Index

A

add log, 649
agent-priority, 569
alias, 92
    no alias, 93
arp timeout, 428
    no arp timeout, 429
auth username
    no auth username, 410
auth usernamet, 409
authorized-manager, 608
    no authorized-manager, 608
authorized-manager ip-source, 609
    no authorized-manager ip-source, 611
auto-learn, 615
auto-save, 132
    no auto-save, 133
Available system functions, 29

B

base bridge mode, 213, 252
bridge-mode, 214
broadcast-block, 93
broadcast-priority, 570

C

cancel restart-time, 127
change password, 583
channel-group, 258
    no channel-group, 259
clear counters, 74
clear fault counter, 646
clear history, 58
clear hrp counters, 458
clear line vty, 74
clear logbook, 645
clear ring-redundancy manager counters, 459
clear screen, 50
clear spanning-tree counters, 270
clear spanning-tree detected protocols, 270
clear standby counter, 459
clear-all-static-unicast, 614
CLI commands
    Symbolic representation, 45
cli-console-timeout, 82
    no cli-console-timeout, 83
client-position, 484
configure terminal, 75
coordinates height, 83
coordinates latitude, 84
coordinates longitude, 85
cos-map, 572
cos-remap, 573
cos-remap enable, 574

D

das delete, 140
das discover interface, 136
das mac blink, 139
das mac ip, 138
das mac name, 137
dcp forwarding, 326
dcp server, 324
    no dcp server, 324
delay mechanism, 195
delete, 115
disable, 76
do, 51
domain-id, 481
domain-name, 481
dot1x guest-vlan, 621, 624
    no dot1x guest-vlan, 622, 625
dot1x guest-vlan reset, 627
dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id, 625
    no dot1x guest-vlan vlan-id, 626
dot1x mac-auth, 622, 628
    no dot1x mac-auth, 629
dot1x mac-auth port reset, 630
dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign, 630
    no dot1x mac-auth vlan-assign, 631
dot1x port-control, 633
    no dot1x port-control, 634
dot1x reauthentication, 634
    no dot1x reauthentication, 635
dscp-map, 576
duplex, 94
    no duplex, 95

E

enable, 77

ethernetip, 86
event config, 652
    no event config, 655
events, 647
exit, 53

F

factoryclean, 158
fault report ack, 646
firmware-on-plug, 158
    no firmware-on-plug, 159
flowcontrol, 561
fmp, 667
fmp power-loss, 669
fmp rx-power, 670

G

Glossary, 26

H

help, 54
host, 356
hrp-redundancy-loss, 663
    no hrp-redundancy-loss, 664

I

instance, 306
    no instance, 307
Interconnection, 486
interface, 79
    no interface, 81
Interface, 482
interface range, 215
    no interface range, 216
ip address, 326, 328
ip address dhcp, 334
ip dhcp client mode, 333
ip dhcp config-file-request, 331
    no ip dhcp config-file-request, 332
ip dhcp relay circuit-id, 369
    no ip dhcp relay circuit-id, 370
ip dhcp relay circuit-id option, 362
ip dhcp relay common-agent-address, 364
ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface, 366
ip dhcp relay information option, 363
    no ip dhcp relay information option, 364
ip dhcp relay remote-id, 371
ip dhcp server, 361
    no ip dhcp server, 361
ip dhcp-server, 338
    no ip dhcp-server, 338
ip dhcp-server icmp-probe, 339
    no ip dhcp-server icmp-probe, 340
ip dhcp-server pool, 341
    no ip dhcp-server pool, 342
ip echo-reply, 320
    no ip echo-reply, 321
ip gateway, 319
    no ip gateway, 319
ip http, 420
    no ip http, 420
ip http port, 421
    no ip http port, 422
ip http secure, 424
    no ip http secure, 425
ip http secure port, 425
    no ip http secure port, 426
ip igmp snooping clear counters, 449
ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval, 451
    no ip igmp snooping port-purge-interval, 452
ip igmp snooping querier, 453, 455
    no ip igmp snooping querier, 454, 456
ip igmp snooping switch-ip, 449
ip igmp snooping version, 447
ip igmp vlan-snooping, 448
    no ip igmp vlan-snooping, 448
ip nat, 518, 521
ip nat napt, 523
ip nat pool, 524
ip nat service, 525
ip nat service portrange, 528
ip nat static, 530
ip nat timeout, 519, 520
ip single-hop inter-vlan-routing, 532

L

lacp timeout, 259
    no lacp timeout, 260
lease time, 343
link, 660
    no link, 661
linkcheck, 470
lldp, 96
    no lldp, 97
load tftp, 112
loadsave, 114
login authentication, 599

logout, 77
loopd, 701, 702

M

mac-address-table aging, 558
    no mac-address-table aging, 558
mac-address-table aging-time, 556
    no mac-address-table aging-time, 557
mac-address-table static multicast, 505, 544
    no mac-address-table static multicast, 545
mac-address-table static multicast (VLAN-unaware), 510, 549
mac-address-table static unicast, 493, 546
    no mac-address-table static unicast, 494, 547
mac-address-table static unicast (VLAN-unaware), 498, 550
    no mac-address-table static unicast (VLAN-unaware), 499, 551
media type, 98
mgmt vlan, 217
monitor, 687
    no monitor, 688
monitor barrier enabled, 689
    no monitor barrier enabled, 690
monitor session
    destination, 690
    no ... destination, 691
    no ... source, 693
    no monitor session, 694
    source, 692
mrpinterconnection, 479
multicast-block, 99

N

name, 238, 308
    no name, 239, 308
negotiation, 101
    no negotiation, 102
network, 344
no agent-priority, 569
no broadcast-block, 94
no broadcast-priority, 571
no cos-remap, 574
no cos-remap enable, 575
no dot1x mac-auth, 623
no fmp, 668
no host, 357
no ip address, 327, 334
no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address, 365
no ip dhcp relay common-agent-address-interface, 367
no ip dhcp relay remote-id, 371
no ip nat, 519, 522
no ip nat napt, 523
no ip nat pool, 525
no ip nat service, 527
no ip nat service portrange, 529
no ip nat static, 530
no ip single-hop inter-vlan-routing, 533
no linkcheck, 471
no login authentication, 600
no mac-address-table static multicast (VLAN-unaware), 511, 550
no mrpinterconnection, 480
no multicast-block, 100
no panel-button control-factory-defaults, 165
no panel-button control-faultmask, 166
no passive listening, 314
no passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood, 312
no ports, 350
no priority, 244
no priority enable, 245
no private-vlan, 246
no private-vlan association, 248
no private-vlan mapping, 222
no radius-server, 605
no relay-information, 352
no ring-redundancy hrpobserver, 464
no rmon, 676
no role, 592
no sinema, 152
no smtp-server-enable, 417
no snmp engineid migrate, 389
no spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility, 281
no spanning-tree rstp-plus, 282
no switchport mode dot1q-tunnel, 230
no switchport private-vlan host-association, 233
no switchport private-vlan mapping, 235
no unicast-block, 106
no user-account-ext, 590
no user-group, 595
no wait-for-completion, 486
noa port config, 101
ntp, 178
ntp secure, 181
    no ntp secure, 182
ntp server id, 179
    no ntp server id, 180
ntp server secure, 180
ntp time diff, 182

O

option, 345
    no option, 347
option value-string, 346
    no option, 347

P

panel-button control-factory-defaults, 164
panel-button control-faultmask, 166
passive listening, 313
passive-listening bpdu-vlan-flood, 312
password, 116
    no password, 117
password policy, 585
ping, 78
plug, 157
pnio, 87
pool-enable, 348
    no pool-enable, 349
port, 411
    no port, 412
ports, 239, 349
    no ports, 241
power, 658
    no power, 659
primary domain, 196
priority, 243
priority enable, 244
private-vlan, 246
private-vlan association, 247
private-vlan mapping, 222
ptp, 192, 197
    no ptp, 193, 197
ptp time diff, 193
ptp transparent-clock configuration, 194
ptp transparent-clock transport-mechanism, 198

Q

qos, 567
qos-trust-mode, 577

R

radius authorization-mode, 601
radius disconnect-packet, 602
    no radius disconnect-packet, 603
radius server, 603
rate-limit-output, 537
    no rate-limit-output, 538
receiver-address, 414
    no receiver-address, 414
redundancy, 463
relay information, 351
restart, 125
revision, 309
    no revision, 310
ring ports, 472
ring redundancy, 465
    no ring redundancy, 466
ring-redundancy dna-redundancy, 467
    no ring-redundancy dna-redundancy, 467
ring-redundancy hrpobserver, 464
rmon, 676
rmon alarm, 677
    no rmon alarm, 679
rmon collection history, 683
    no rmon collection history, 684
rmon collection stats, 681
    no rmon collection stats, 682
rmon event, 679
    no rmon event, 680
role, 483, 591

S

save filetype, 112
schedule restart-timer, 126
scheduling mode, 578
Scope of the manual, 23
security, 415
    no security, 416
send test mail, 409
sender mail-address, 407
    no sender mail-address, 408
sender-address, 412
    no sender address, 413
service dhcp-relay, 367
    no service dhcp-relay, 368
set dot1x guest-vlan mac-addr count, 627
set dot1x mac-auth mac-addr count, 632
set gmrp, 438
set gvrp, 439, 440
set-interface, 353
severity, 656
    no severity, 657
sftp filename, 121
sftp load, 121
sftp save, 122

sftp server, 123
show authorized-managers, 607
show broadcast-block config, 70
show cli-console-timeout, 62
show coordinates, 62
show das info, 135
show dcp forwarding, 317
show dcp server, 317
show device information, 63
show dhcp server, 359
show dot1d mac-address-table, 249, 495, 507
show dot1d mac-address-table static multicast, 250, 508
show dot1d mac-address-table static unicast mode, 250, 496
show dot1x, 619
show dot1x guest-vlan mac-info, 620
show dot1x mac-auth mac-info, 620
show dst info, 171
show environmental temperature, 63
show etherchannel, 255
show ethernetip, 64
show events config, 639
show events faults config, 640
show events faults status, 641
show events sender email, 404
show events severity, 640
show events smtp-port, 405
show events smtp-server, 404
show events syslogserver, 671
show fault counter, 643
show flow-control, 560
show fmp limit, 665
show fmp status, 666
show forward-all, 436
show forward-unregistered, 437
show hardware, 64
show history, 58
show hrp counters, 460
show in, 65
show interface transceiver details, 644
show interfaces, 66
show interfaces ... counters, 67
show interfaces etherchannel, 256
show ip arp, 427
show ip dhcp client, 330
show ip dhcp client stats, 330
show ip dhcp relay information, 360
show ip dhcp server pools, 337
show ip dhcp-server bindings, 336
show ip gateway, 316
show ip http secure server status, 423
show ip http server status, 419
show ip igmp snooping, 442
show ip igmp snooping forwarding-database, 443
show ip igmp snooping groups, 444
show ip igmp snooping mrouter, 445
show ip igmp snooping statistics, 445
show ip igmp snooping switch-ip, 446
show ip interface, 68
show ip nat, 517
show ip nat config, 514
show ip nat service, 515
show ip nat service portrange, 516
show ip nat summary, 516
show ip ssh, 430
show ip telnet, 316
show lacp, 257
show linkcheck, 461
show lldp neighbors, 69
show lldp status, 70
show loadsave files, 110
show loadsave tftp, 111
show lock port, 613
show logbook, 642
show mac-address-table, 203, 488, 501
show mac-address-table aging-status, 555
show mac-address-table aging-time, 555
show mac-address-table count, 204
show mac-address-table dynamic multicast, 205, 502
show mac-address-table dynamic unicast, 206, 489
show mac-address-table static multicast, 207, 503
show mac-address-table static unicast, 208, 490
show monitor, 686
show monitor barrier, 686
show monitor status, 685
show multicast-block config, 72, 504, 509
show noa config, 72
show ntp info, 177
show passive-listening, 311
show password-policy, 582
show plug, 156
show pnio, 68
show power-line-state, 645
show ptp info, 191
show qos agent-priority, 563
show qos broadcast-priority, 563
show qos cos-map, 564
show qos cos-remap, 565
show qos dscp-map, 565
show qos scheduling mode, 566
show qos-trust-mode, 566
show radius server, 598

show radius statistics, 598
show rate-limit output, 536
show ring-redundancy, 461
show ring-redundancy manager counters, 462
show rmon, 674
show running-config, 128
show signaling contact, 168
show sinema, 151
show snmp, 374
show snmp community, 374
show snmp engineID, 375
show snmp filter, 375
show snmp group, 376
show snmp group access, 376
show snmp inform statistics, 377
show snmp notif, 377
show snmp targetaddr, 378
show snmp targetparam, 378
show snmp tcp, 379
show snmp user, 379
show snmp viewtree, 380
show sntp broadcast-mode status, 184
show sntp status, 185
show sntp unicast-mode status, 184
show spanning-tree, 261
show spanning-tree active, 262
show spanning-tree bridge, 263
show spanning-tree detail, 263
show spanning-tree interface, 264
show spanning-tree interface layer2-gateway-port, 265
show spanning-tree mst, 266
show spanning-tree mst configuration, 266
show spanning-tree mst interface, 267
show spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility, 268
show spanning-tree root, 269
show ssh-fingerprint, 430
show ssl server-cert, 423
show time, 171
show unicast-block config, 71, 491, 496
show unicast-mac flush config, 492, 497
show user-accounts, 583
show users, 582
show versions, 73
show vlan, 208
show vlan device info, 209, 251
show vlan learning params, 210
show vlan port config, 210
show vlan private-vlan, 211
show web-session-timeout, 161
shutdown, 103
  no shutdown, 104
shutdown complete, 103
signaling contact mode, 169
signaling-contact status, 169
SIMATIC NET glossary, 26
SIMATIC NET manual, 25
sinema, 152
SMTP
  no smtp-server, 407
  smtp-server, 406
smtp-server-enable, 417
snmp
  client config, 650
  no client config, 651
snmp access, 384
  no snmp access, 385
snmp agent version, 383
snmp community index, 386
  no snmp community index, 387
snmp engineid migrate, 388
snmp group, 390
  no snmp group, 391
snmp notify, 391
  no snmp notify, 392
snmp targetaddr, 393
  no snmp targetaddr, 395
snmp targetparams, 396
  no snmp targetparams, 398
snmp user, 400
  no snmp user, 401
snmp v1-v2 readonly, 398
  no snmp v1-v2 readonly, 399
snmp view, 401
  no snmp view, 403
snmpagent, 381
  no snmpagent, 381
snmpagent port, 382
  no snmpagent port, 382
snooping report-process config-level, 450
sntp, 186
sntp client addressing-mode, 187
sntp time diff, 188
sntp unicast-server, 189
sntp unicast-server ipv4
  no sntp unicast-server ipv4, 190
spanning-tree, 271
  no spanning-tree, 272
spanning-tree (properties), 287
  no spanning-tree, 288
spanning-tree (time settings), 284
  no spanning-tree, 285

spanning-tree auto-edge, 290
no spanning-tree auto-edge, 290
spanning-tree bpdufilter, 292
spanning-tree bpdu-receive, 292
spanning-tree bpdu-transmit, 291
spanning-tree compatibility, 273
no spanning-tree compatibility, 274
spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port, 293
no spanning-tree layer2-gateway-port, 294
spanning-tree limited-tcn, 304
no spanning-tree limited-tcn, 305
spanning-tree loop-guard, 294
no spanning-tree loop-guard, 295
spanning-tree mst (properties), 296
no spanning-tree mst, 297
spanning-tree mst configuration, 274
spanning-tree mst hello-time, 298
no spanning-tree mst hello-time, 299
spanning-tree mst instance-id root, 275
no spanning-tree mst instance-id root, 276
spanning-tree mst max-hops, 277
no spanning-tree mst max-hops, 278
spanning-tree mst pseudoRootId, 300
no spanning-tree mst pseudoRootId, 301
spanning-tree passive-listening-compatibility, 280
spanning-tree priority, 278
no spanning-tree priority, 279
spanning-tree restricted-role, 302
no spanning-tree restricted-role, 302
spanning-tree restricted-tcn, 303
no spanning-tree restricted-tcn, 303
spanning-tree rstp-plus, 281
spanning-tree rstp-plus mrp-intercon-domain-id, 283
speed, 105
ssh-server, 431
no ssh-server, 432
ssh-server port, 432
no ssh-server port, 433
standby connection name, 474
standby ports, 476, 477
standby wait-for-partner, 478
no standby wait-for-partner, 478
start, 617
static-lease, 354
no static-lease, 355
stop, 618
storm-control, 539
no storm-control, 540
storm-control level, 541
no storm-control level, 541
switchport acceptable-frame-type, 223
no switchport acceptable-frame-type, 224
switchport access vlan, 225
no switchport access vlan, 226
switchport ingress-filter, 552
no switchport ingress-filter, 553
switchport lock, 616
no switchport lock, 616
switchport mode, 226
no switchport mode, 228
switchport mode dot1q-tunnel, 229
switchport mode private vlan, 228
switchport priority default, 231
no switchport priority default, 231
switchport private-vlan host-association, 232
switchport private-vlan mapping, 234
switchport pvid, 235
no switchport pvid, 236
syslogserver, 662, 672
no syslogserver, 663, 673
system contact, 87
system location, 88
System manual, 25
system name, 89

T

telnet-server, 321
no telnet-server, 322
telnet-server port, 322
no telnet-server port, 323
tftp filename, 117
tftp load, 118
tftp save, 119
tftp server, 120
Downloading, 112
Saving, 112
time, 172
time dst date, 174
no time dst, 176
time dst recurring, 175
time set, 173

U

unicast-block, 106
unicast-mac flush, 107
user-account, 586
no user-account, 588
user-account-ext, 589
user-group, 593
username, 90, 595

V

vlan, 218, 254
    no vlan, 219
vlan range, 220
vlan tag-priority override, 220

W

wait-for-completion, 485
web-session-timeout, 162
    no web-session-timeout, 162
whoami, 584
write, 159
write startup-config, 131